

G E R M A N

FLAMRIC

VOLUME 3

GRAMMATICAL STRUCTURES II

LESSONS 15-26

AUGUST 1981

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE
FOREIGN LANGUAGE CENTER

PREFACE

The four volumes entitled "Grammatical Structures" consist of 44 lessons and are designed to teach the basic structures of the German language. All of the lessons were taken entirely from the DLIFLC Basic Structure Series, with the exception of particular adaptations and additional material being included to make them almost self-contained for self-paced study or classroom instruction. The grammatical features contained in the lessons are sequenced according to difficulty, i.e. from simple to difficult, so that similar grammatical features are not necessarily placed in the same or consecutive lessons.

GUIDELINES

Use of this book does not depend upon the availability of the recorded tapes from the DLIFLC Basic Structure Series. (Note: Cassette tapes are available from the Basic Structure Series.) If, however, use of the tape recordings is desired, you may easily adapt the tapes to the Grammatical Structures lessons. You must be aware, though, that the word "lesson" is substituted for "module" and the lesson number is one higher than the original module number (e.g. Lesson 1 is the Introductory Module and Lesson 2 is Module 1).

In order to focus maximum attention on the structural features themselves, the vocabulary used in the lessons has been restricted to a small number of high frequency words, most of which should already be quite familiar to you. Whenever additional words are introduced, the English meaning will be shown.

Each lesson usually includes two or more related sections indicated by a section topic. The end of each section is identified on the recording by two beeps. At the end of a given section, you may, if you wish, repeat that section for additional study and practice. In addition, it is important to note that if you are looking for a particular grammatical point, a comprehensive index can be found following the text at the end of each volume of the Grammatical Structures portion of FLAMRIC.

OBJECTIVE

Upon satisfactory completion of a lesson and quiz, you should be able to easily and accurately speak and write correct German sentences embodying the structural features taught.

CONTENTS

LESSON 15	Adjective Endings after "Der" words	1	LESSON 18	Verbs used like Modals	69
	Section 1 - Predicate Adjectives.	1		Section 1 - Sehen, Hören, Helfen, Lernen Lehren:	69
	Section 2 - Descriptive Adjectives (Nominative Singular)	4		Section 2 - "Lassen" and "sich lassen"	86
	Section 3 - Descriptive Adjectives (Accusative Singular)	8	LESSON 19	"Der" words and Descriptive Adjectives after "Der" words	95
	Section 4 - Descriptive Adjectives (Dative Singular)	15		Section 1 - Dieser and other "Der" words	95
	Section 5 - Descriptive Adjectives (Plural of Nominative, Accusative, and Dative Cases)	22		Section 2 - Adjective endings after dieser and other "der" words.	110
	Section 6 - Descriptive Adjectives in Appositions	29		Summary Exercises	120
LESSON 16	Adjective Endings after "Kein" words	33	LESSON 20	Adjectives not Preceded by "Der" or "Kein" words.	124
	Section 1 - Review of "Kein" words.	33		Section 1 - Unpreceded Descriptive Adjectives (Singular and Plural).	124
	Section 2 - Descriptive Adjectives (Nominative Singular)	34		Section 2 - Appellations, Salutations and Idiomatic Expressions.	131
	Section 3 - Descriptive Adjectives (Accusative Singular)	44		Section 3 - Adjectives Expressing Quantity	137
	Section 4 - Descriptive Adjectives (Dative Singular)	51	LESSON 21	Present Perfect Tense I.	141
	Section 5 - Descriptive Adjectives (Plural of Nominative, Accusative, and Dative Cases)	55		Section 1 - Formation of the Present Perfect Tense.	141
LESSON 17	Sequence of Objects	56		Section 2 - Present Perfect Tense of Regular (weak) Verbs	144
	Section 1 - Sentences with two Noun Objects	56		Section 3 - Present Perfect Tense of Irregular (strong and mixed) Verbs	151
	Section 2 - Sentences with one Noun Object and one Pronoun Object.	59		Summary Exercises	159
	Section 3 - Sentences with two Pronoun Objects	64			

LESSON 22	Present Perfect Tense II. . . . .	.162		
	Section 1 - Present Perfect Tense with Separable Prefix Verbs. . . . .	.162		
	Section 2 - Verbs with Inseparable Prefixes .167			
	Section 3 - Verbs of Foreign Origin ending in "-ieren". . . . .	.171		
	Section 4 - Present Perfect Tense of Reflexive Verbs . . . . .	.175		
	Section 5 - Present Perfect Tense of Verbs using the Auxiliary "sein". . . . .	.180		
	Summary Exercises . . . . .	.188		
	List of Commonly Used Strong Verbs. . . . .	.197		
LESSON 23	Transposed Word Order . . . . .	.204		
	Section 1 - Transposed word order after Subordinating Conjunctions. . . . .	.204		
	Section 2 - Transposed word order in Subordinate Clauses using Separable Prefix Verbs, Modal Auxiliary Verbs, Reflexive Constructions and Present Perfect Tense . . . . .	.213		
	Section 3 - Transposed word order in Subordinate Clauses following question words. . . . .	.223		
	Section 4 - Sentences beginning with a Subordinate Clause. . . . .	.227		
LESSON 24	Relative Pronouns I . . . . .	.229		
	Section 1 - Overview of Relative Pronouns . . . . .	.229		
	Section 2 - Nominative Case of the Relative Pronoun . . . . .	.232		
	Section 3 - Accusative Case of the Relative Pronoun . . . . .	.241		
	Section 4 - Dative Case of the Relative Pronoun. . . . .	.246		
	Section 5 - Relative Pronouns in all three Cases (Summary Exercises). . . . .	.250		
LESSON 25	Relative Pronouns II . . . . .	.255		
	Section 1 - Relative Pronouns following "Accusative only" Prepositions . . . . .	.256		
	Section 2 - Relative Pronouns following "Dative only" Prepositions . . . . .	.258		
	Section 3 - Relative Pronouns following "Dative or Accusative" Prepositions . . . . .	.263		
	Section 4 - Relative Pronouns following Prepositions of all types (Summary Exercises). . . . .	.269		
LESSON 26	Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs. . . . .	.277		
	Section 1 - Comparison of Adjectives . . . . .	.277		
	Section 2 - Comparative and Superlative of Predicate Adjectives. . . . .	.287		
	Section 3 - Comparative and Superlative of Descriptive Adjectives . . . . .	.299		
	Section 4 - Comparison of Adverbs. . . . .	.308		
	Index of Grammatical Features . . . . .	.313		

It will first be necessary for you to learn to recognize predicate adjective constructions. Listen to and repeat the following examples:

1. Das Mädchen ist schön.
(The girl is beautiful.)
2. Die Männer sind alt.
(The men are old.)
3. Er ist krank.
(He is sick.)
4. Ich werde sehr müde.
(I am getting very tired.)
5. Bleiben Sie gesund!
(Stay well!)

NOTES

Listen to and repeat the following sentences, noticing the English translations.

1. Der Lehrer ist freundlich.
(The teacher is friendly.)
2. Seine Mutter ist freundlich.
(His mother is friendly.)
3. Das Mädchen ist freundlich.
(The girl is friendly.)
4. Der Film ist interessant.
(The film is interesting.)
5. Die Zeitschrift ist interessant.
(The magazine is interesting.)
6. Das Buch ist interessant.
(The book is interesting.)
7. Der Kaffee wird kalt.
(The coffee is getting cold.)
8. Die Milch wird kalt.
(The milk is getting cold.)
9. Das Essen wird kalt.
(The food is getting cold.)

As you repeated the above sentences, you should have noticed that the form of the adjective does not change regardless of the gender or number of the noun.

Say the German, forming sentences with the given elements.

NOTES

1. The girl is young.

Das Mädchen/sein/jung.

2. The gentleman is nice.

Der Herr/sein/nett.

3. The lamp is broken.

Die Lampe/sein/kaputt.

4. It is getting warm in the room.

Es/werden/warm/im Zimmer.

5. The sky remains blue.

Der Himmel/bleiben/blau.

6. The child is healthy.

Das Kind/sein/gesund.

7. The teacher is sick today.

Der Lehrer/sein/heute/krank.

8. The apartment is clean.

Die Wohnung/sein/sauber.

Section 2

Descriptive Adjectives (Nominative Singular)

In the preceding section, you practiced using adjectives which did not change their form because they were being used in predicate adjective constructions.

When using a German adjective in an "other-than-predicate-adjective" situation, you must be careful to use the appropriate form of the adjective depending on the gender, number, and case of the noun which the adjective precedes. In addition, you will learn that the form which the adjective takes also depends on whether it is preceded by a "der" word or a "kein" word. In the following sections of this module, you will study only the adjective forms used after "der" words. The adjective forms used after "kein" words will be presented in the next lesson.

The "der" words you are familiar with at this point are the definite articles (der, die, das). Other "der" words will be introduced in later lessons.

Listen to and repeat the following sentences:

1. Der junge Mann arbeitet viel.
(The young man works a lot.)
2. Die schöne Frau trinkt ein Glas Wein.
(The beautiful woman is drinking a glass of wine.)
3. Das rote Buch liegt auf dem Tisch.
(The red book is lying on the table.)

In what case are the nouns Mann, Frau, and Buch in the above sentences?

Since all three nouns are the subjects of their respective sentences, they are in the nominative case.

If the "citation" or "dictionary" forms of junge, schöne, and rote are jung, schön, and rot, what ending do adjectives used with nominative case nouns have, regardless of the gender of the noun?

The only exception to this rule is in the case of adjectives whose citation form already ends in -e. With these adjectives, no further -e needs to be added, as in the following example:

<u>Citation Form</u>	<u>Full Sentence</u>
<u>müde</u> (tired)	Die müde Frau setzt sich auf das Sofa. (The tired woman sits down on the sofa.)

Some adjectives whose citation form ends in -er or -el drop the -e- before the -r or -l when an ending is added. You have already encountered a similar phenomenon with the possessive adjective euer (Lesson 12). We will use the following descriptive adjectives which have this change:

<u>Citation Form</u>	<u>Ending-added Form</u>
teuer (expensive)	Das <u>teure</u> Buch liegt hier.
dunkel (dark)	Das <u>dunkle</u> Bier schmeckt mir.

There is also a slight irregularity in the adjective hoch ("high"; "senior"), which drops the -c- when an ending is added:

Citation Form

hoch

Ending-added Form

Der hohe Berg ist nicht weit von hier.

(The high mountain is not far from here.)

Der hohe Offizier besucht unsere Schule.

(The senior [high ranking] officer is visiting our school.)

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate form of the adjective on the basis of the given English. The citation form of the adjective is shown in parentheses.

1. The old city map is lying on the table. (alt)

Der _____ Stadtplan liegt auf dem Tisch.

2. The expensive apartment belongs to my brother. (teuer)

Die _____ Wohnung gehört meinem Bruder.

3. The small garden belongs to us. (klein)

Der _____ Garten gehört uns.

4. The high price doesn't bother me. (hoch)

Der _____ Preis stört mich nicht.

5. The young teacher is waiting for her husband. (jung)

Die _____ Lehrerin wartet auf ihren Mann.

6. I don't like the green apple. (grün)

Der _____ Apfel schmeckt mir nicht.

7. The new building there is a school. (neu)

Das _____ Gebäude dort ist eine Schule.

8. The tired child (will) sleep soon. (müde)

Das _____ Kind schläft bald.

9. The sick man doesn't want to eat. (krank)

Der _____ Mann will nicht essen.

10. The light beer tastes better. (hell)

Das _____ Bier schmeckt besser.

11. The senior officer is visiting our school. (hoch)

Der _____ Offizier besucht unsere Schule.

12. The dark room has only one window. (dunkel)

Das _____ Zimmer hat nur ein Fenster.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. alte
- _____ 2. teure
- _____ 3. kleine
- _____ 4. hohe
- _____ 5. junge
- _____ 6. grüne
- _____ 7. neue
- _____ 8. müde

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 9. kranke
- _____ 10. helle
- _____ 11. hohe
- _____ 12. dunkle

START THE TAPE.

NOTES

Say the entire German sentence, supplying the appropriate form of the adjective given in parentheses.

1. The red pencil belongs to me. (rot)
Der Bleistift gehört mir.
2. The friendly gentleman greets us. (freundlich)
Der Herr grüsst uns.
3. The blue sports car belongs to my brother. (blau)
Der Sportwagen gehört meinem Bruder.
4. The tired man is sitting on the sofa. (müde)
Der Mann sitzt auf dem Sofa.
5. The expensive car rides well. (teuer)
Das Auto fährt gut.
6. The new teacher is named Schmidt. (neu)
Die Lehrerin heisst Schmidt.
7. The beautiful girl is going home. (schön)
Das Mädchen geht nach Hause.
8. The cheap wine doesn't taste good to me. (billig)
Der Wein schmeckt mir nicht.
9. The tired child stays home. (müde)
Das Kind bleibt zu Hause.

10. The red sports car drives well. (rot)

Der Sportwagen fährt gut.

11. I like the dark beer very much. (dunkel)

Das Bier schmeckt mir sehr gut.

12. The young woman helps the teacher. (jung)

Die Frau hilft der Lehrerin.

13. The senior officer is coming tomorrow.
(hoch)

Der Offizier kommt morgen.

NOTES

Section 3

Descriptive Adjectives (Accusative Singular)

Listen to and repeat the following sentences:

1. Ich sehe den alten Mann.
(I see the old man.)
2. Ich sehe die junge Dame.
(I see the young lady.)
3. Ich sehe das kleine Kind.
(I see the small child.)

In what case are the underlined words in the above sentences?

The underlined words are in the accusative case because the nouns involved (Mann, Dame, Kind) are direct objects.

Assuming that alt, jung, and klein are the citation forms of these adjectives, what ending is added when adjectives are used with feminine or neuter nouns in the accusative case?

The proper ending for adjectives modifying feminine or neuter nouns in the accusative case is -e. This, of course, is just like the -e ending for all genders in the nominative case.

Only one adjective ending in the accusative case is different from -e. This occurs with nouns of what gender?

What is the adjective ending?

NOTES

The proper ending for adjectives modifying masculine nouns in the accusative case is -en. It may help you to note that the -en ending for adjectives used with accusative case nouns is the same as the definite article ending in the accusative case:

Ich sehe den Mann.

Ich sehe den alten Mann.

Listen to and repeat the following sentences, noticing the gender of the noun accusative objects and the corresponding adjective endings. Remember also the spelling changes in teuer, dunkel, and hoch.

1. Ich kenne die nette Dame.

(I know the nice lady.)

2. Wir trinken den teuren Wein nicht.

(We don't drink the expensive wine.)

3. Ich kenne die Hohe Strasse in Köln.

(I know the "Hohe Strasse" in Cologne.)

4. Sie kennen den freundlichen Herrn.

(They know the friendly gentleman.)

5. Hans sieht sich den interessanten Film an.

(Hans is watching the interesting movie.)

6. Peter und Karl gehen durch die dunkle Strasse.

(Peter and Karl walk through the dark street.)

7. Sie kaufen das teure Auto nicht.

(They are not buying the expensive car.)

8. Das Kind trinkt die frische Milch.

(The child is drinking the fresh milk.)

9. Er sucht den neuen Ball.

(He is looking for the new ball.)

10. Inge und Peter kennen das kleine Kind.

(Inge and Peter know the little child.)

NOTES

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate form of the adjective shown in parentheses.

1. We buy the new magazine. (neu)

Wir kaufen die _____ Zeitschrift.

2. They go into the dark church. (dunkel)

Sie gehen in die _____ Kirche.

3. She is selling the old lamp. (alt)

Sie verkauft die _____ Lampe.

4. The soldiers greet the senior officer.
(hoch)

Die Soldaten grüssen den _____ Offizier.

5. The child disturbs the tired mother. (müde)

Das Kind stört die _____ Mutter.

6. The teacher is looking for the red pencil. (rot)

Die Lehrerin sucht den _____ Bleistift.

7. The teacher needs the large dictionary. (gross)

Der Lehrer braucht das _____ Wörterbuch.

8. We would like to buy the green car. (grün)

Wir möchten das _____ Auto kaufen.

9. She takes the clean cup. (sauber)

Sie nimmt die _____ Tasse.

10. She gives the dirty glass to the waiter.
(schmutzig)

Sie gibt dem Kellner das _____ Glas.

11. He is giving her the beautiful flower. (schön)

Er gibt ihr die _____ Blume.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

NOTES

NOTES

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

_____ 1. neue

_____ 2. dunkle

_____ 3. alte

_____ 4. hohen

_____ 5. müde

_____ 6. roten

_____ 7. grosse

_____ 8. grüne

_____ 9. saubere

_____ 10. schmutzige

_____ 11. schöne

START THE TAPE.

Say the entire German sentence, incorporating the appropriate form of the adjective given in parentheses.

1. She is buying the inexpensive wine. (billig)
Sie kauft den Wein.
2. He is looking for the blue coat. (blau)
Er sucht den Mantel.
3. We don't want to bring the tired child along.
(müde)
Wir wollen das Kind nicht mitbringen.
4. The child is not allowed to drink the cold milk.
(kalt)
Das Kind darf die Milch nicht trinken.
5. The doctor visits the sick lady. (krank)
Der Arzt besucht die Dame.

6. She writes down the long sentence. (lang)
Sie schreibt den Satz auf.
7. Hans is buying the expensive sports car. (teuer)
Hans kauft den Sportwagen.
8. My classmate lends me the green book. (grün)
Mein Klassenkamerad leiht mir das Buch.
9. I would like to buy the beautiful plant. (schön)
Ich möchte die Pflanze kaufen.
10. The lady knows the young girl. (jung)
Die Dame kennt das Mädchen.
11. He shows us the new bicycle. (neu)
Er zeigt uns das Fahrrad.

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate form of the adjectives in parentheses. Note that both nominative and accusative forms are called for.

1. The old man drinks his wine. (alt)
Der _____ Mann trinkt seinen Wein.
2. The small child cannot open the door. (klein)
Das _____ Kind kann die Tür nicht öffnen.
3. The young soldier speaks German. (jung)
Der _____ Soldat spricht Deutsch.

4. The nice teacher is named Schneider. (nett)
Die _____ Lehrerin heisst Schneider.
5. Mr. Müller is drinking the cold beer. (kalt)
Herr Müller trinkt das _____ Bier.
6. The interesting gentleman comes from America. (interessant)
Der _____ Herr kommt aus Amerika.
7. We would like to buy the beautiful car. (schön)
Wir möchten den _____ Wagen kaufen.
8. He sees the young lady every morning. (jung)
Er sieht die _____ Dame jeden Morgen.
9. I like the clean city. (sauber)
(The clean city pleases me.)
Die _____ Stadt gefällt mir.
10. The friendly girl is helping the children. (freundlich)
Das _____ Mädchen hilft den Kindern.
11. Hans is greeting the new student. (neu)
Hans grüsst den _____ Schüler.
12. The soldiers are climbing the high mountain. (hoch)
Die Soldaten steigen auf den _____ Berg.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. alte
- _____ 2. kleine
- _____ 3. junge
- _____ 4. nette
- _____ 5. kalte
- _____ 6. interessante

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 7. schönen
- _____ 8. junge
- _____ 9. saubere
- _____ 10. freundliche
- _____ 11. neuen
- _____ 12. hohen
- START THE TAPE.

Descriptive Adjectives (Dative Singular)

Listen to and repeat the following sentences:

1. Die Frau gibt dem armen Mann Geld.
(The woman gives the poor man money.)
2. Das Mädchen kommt aus dem alten Haus.
(The girl is coming out of the old house.)
3. Der Schüler schenkt dem schönen Mädchen ein Buch.
(The student gives the pretty girl a book.)

In which case are the underlined words above, and why?

They are in the dative case because they are indirect objects or because they follow prepositions or verbs which require the dative.

What adjective ending is used with nouns of all genders in the dative case (following the definite articles)?

Listen to and repeat the following sentences, noticing the "dative case" ending of the adjective and the reason for the use of the dative case (either "dative-only" verb or indirect object, or preposition requiring the dative).

In short, concentrate on the -en dative endings of the descriptive adjective following the definite article:

1. Er dankt der jungen Dame.
(He thanks the young lady.) ("dative-only" verb)
2. Sie gibt dem kleinen Kind Milch.
(She gives milk to the small child.) (indirect object)
3. Der Kellner kommt mit dem kalten Bier.
(The waiter is coming with the cold beer.) (Preposition requiring the dative)
4. Die Tochter hilft der müden Mutter.
(The daughter is helping the tired mother.)
5. Das Buch gehört dem kleinen Kind.
(The book belongs to the little child.)
6. Er hat genug von dem billigen Wein.
(He has enough of the cheap wine.)
7. Hans und Inge fahren mit dem neuen Sportwagen.
(Hans and Inge are driving in the new sports car.)
8. Viele Büros sind in dem hohen Gebäude.
(Many offices are in the high building.)
9. Wir essen in dem teuren Restaurant.
(We are eating at the expensive restaurant.)
10. Wir zeigen dem neuen Schüler das Klassenzimmer.
(We are showing the new student the classroom.)

Say the complete German sentences, supplying the appropriate form of the adjective given in parentheses.

1. The gentleman is climbing out of the red car. (rot).
Der Herr steigt aus dem Auto.
2. The teacher helps the new student. (neu)
Die Lehrerin hilft dem Schüler.
3. We are coming out of the big church. (gross)
Wir kommen aus der Kirche.
4. The lady writes a letter to the nice gentleman. (nett)
Die Dame schreibt dem Herrn einen Brief.
5. No one is here except the little child. (klein)
Ausser dem Kind ist niemand hier.
6. The girl thanks the old lady. (alt)
Das Mädchen dankt der Dame.
7. After the cold weather, the garden needs sun. (kalt)
Nach dem Wetter braucht der Garten Sonne.
8. The soldiers are living in the new barracks. (neu)
Die Soldaten wohnen in der Kaserne.

Fill in the blanks, supplying the appropriate form of the adjective given in parentheses.

NOTES

1. The soldier thanks the senior officer.
(hoch)

Der Soldat dankt dem _____ Offizier.

2. The children speak with the old lady. (alt)

Die Kinder sprechen mit der _____ Dame.

3. The mother gives the small child something to drink. (klein)

Die Mutter gibt dem _____ Kind etwas zu trinken.

4. Mrs. Meyer is coming out of the big store. (gross)

Frau Meyer kommt aus dem _____ Laden.

5. He is living at the old man's house. (alt)

Er wohnt bei dem _____ Mann.

6. The young girl likes the soldier. (jung)

Der Soldat gefällt dem _____ Mädchen.

7. She is taking a walk with the new student (masc.).
(neu)

Sie macht einen Spaziergang mit dem _____ Schüler.

8. I am tired after the long day. (lang)

Ich bin nach dem _____ Tag müde.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

START THE TAPE.

_____ 1. hohen

_____ 2. alten

_____ 3. kleinen

_____ 4. grossen

_____ 5. alten

_____ 6. jungen

_____ 7. neuen

_____ 8. langen

So far, you have learned the adjective forms to be used with singular nouns (of all genders) following definite articles.

	<u>Masculine</u>	<u>Feminine</u>	<u>Neuter</u>
Nominative	der alte <u> </u>	die alte <u> </u>	das alte <u> </u>
Accusative	den alte <u>n</u>	die alte <u> </u>	das alte <u> </u>
Dative	dem alte <u>n</u>	der alte <u>n</u>	dem alte <u>n</u>

You will note that the only two endings used are -e and -en. The ending -e appears in all genders of the nominative case and -en in all genders of the dative case. In the accusative case, -en is used with adjectives modifying masculine nouns, and -e is used with adjectives modifying feminine or neuter nouns.

Study this table, then turn the page for exercises combining all genders and cases.

This exercise uses descriptive adjectives in the nominative, accusative, and dative singular. In addition, sentences using predicate adjectives are included for review. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate form of the adjective in parentheses.

1. The old man lives here. (alt)
Der _____ Mann wohnt hier.
2. We bring the new teacher flowers. (neu)
Wir bringen der _____ Lehrerin Blumen.
3. My sports car is broken. (kaputt)
Mein Sportwagen ist _____.
4. Peter is going with the young student to the movies. (jung)
Peter geht mit der _____ Schülerin ins Kino.
5. The tall building is very interesting. (hoch)
Das _____ Gebäude ist sehr interessant.
6. Karl and Maria are coming out of the elegant store. (elegant)
Karl und Maria kommen aus dem _____ Laden.
7. The food in the restaurant is very good. (gut)
Das Essen in dem Restaurant ist sehr _____.
8. The tired child doesn't drink the milk. (müde)
Das _____ Kind trinkt die Milch nicht.

9. The teacher is very tired today. (müde)
Der Lehrer ist heute sehr _____.
10. We drink the cold wine. (kalt).
Wir trinken den _____ Wein.
11. Are you buying the expensive wine? (teuer)
Kaufen Sie den _____ Wein?
12. Mrs. Meyer, are you buying the new house? (neu)
Frau Meyer, kaufen Sie das _____ Haus?
13. Do you know the friendly neighbor? (freundlich)
Kennst du den _____ Nachbarn?
14. Help the tired child! (müde)
Hilf dem _____ Kind!
15. The church is beautiful. (schön)
Die Kirche ist _____.
16. We live at the old gentleman's. (alt)
Wir wohnen bei dem _____ Herrn.
17. The elegant lady comes from Paris. (elegant)
Die _____ Dame kommt aus Paris.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

_____ 1. alte

_____ 2. neuen

_____ 3. kaputt

_____ 4. jungen

_____ 5. hohe

_____ 6. eleganten

_____ 7. gut

_____ 8. müde

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

_____ 9. müde

_____ 10. kalten

_____ 11. teuren

_____ 12. neue

_____ 13. freundlichen

_____ 14. müden

_____ 15. schön

_____ 16. alten

_____ 17. elegante

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences, supplying the appropriate form of the adjective in parentheses.

1. The rich lady lives in Cologne. (reich)
Die Dame wohnt in Köln.
2. Is your child still small? (klein)
Ist Ihr Kind noch?
3. He drives in the red sports car to Munich. (rot)
Er fährt mit dem Sportwagen nach München.
4. Hans and Inge help the young teacher. (jung)
Hans und Inge helfen der Lehrerin.
5. The child is drinking the fresh milk. (frisch)
Das Kind trinkt die Milch.
6. They want to sell the little house. (klein)
Sie wollen das Haus verkaufen.
7. The new student wants to study German. (neu)
Der Schüler will Deutsch lernen.
8. The movie is too long. (lang)
Der Film ist zu
9. The green car belongs to me. (grün)
Das Auto gehört mir.
10. Is Karl taking the brown suitcase along? (braun)
Nimmt Karl den Koffer mit?
11. She likes the expensive coat. (teuer)
Der Mantel gefällt ihr.
12. Ingrid is helping the tired girl friend. (müde)
Ingrid hilft der Freundin.
13. Do you know where the nice teacher is? (nett)
Weisst du, wo die Lehrerin ist?
14. They have to pick up the poor child. (arm)
Sie müssen das Kind abholen.
15. The house is very dirty. (schmutzig)
Das Haus ist sehr
16. Mr. Meyer is returning from the big trip. (gross)
Herr Meyer kommt von der Reise zurück.
17. The students drink the dark beer. (dunkel)
Die Schüler trinken das Bier.

5. Descriptive Adjectives (Plural of
Nominative, Accusative, and Dative Cases)

The plural forms of descriptive adjectives are very easy to learn, since they have the same ending regardless of the gender or case of the noun modified. This ending is -en. Adjectives whose citation form ends in -e add only -n, and teuer, dunkel, and hoch have the spelling changes previously discussed.

Listen to and repeat the following sentences, noticing that the form of the plural adjective remains constant regardless of the gender or case of the noun.

Section 5

Descriptive Adjectives (Plural of
Nominative, Accusative, and Dative Cases)

Nominative

Die jungen Männer kommen morgen. (The young men are coming tomorrow.)

Die jungen Damen kommen morgen.

Die jungen Kinder kommen morgen.

Accusative

Ich lade die freundlichen Männer ein. (I am inviting the friendly men.)

Ich lade die freundlichen Damen ein.

Ich lade die freundlichen Kinder ein.

Dative

Wir schenken den müden Männern Kaffee ein. (We are pouring coffee for the tired men.)

Wir schenken den müden Damen Kaffee ein.

Wir schenken den müden Kindern Kaffee ein.

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate form of the descriptive adjective in parentheses.

1. They like the fast sports cars. (schnell)

Die _____ Sportwagen gefallen ihnen.

2. Where are the clean glasses? (sauber)

Wo stehen die _____ Gläser?

3. Some sherry is in the small glasses. (klein)

In den _____ Gläsern ist Sherry.

4. The teacher helps the young girls.
(jung)

Die Lehrerin hilft den _____ Mädchen.

5. They are walking through the dark forests.
(dunkel)

Sie gehen durch die _____ Wälder.

6. Peter, give me the red pencils! (rot)

Peter, gib mir die _____ Bleistifte!

7. The soldiers answer the new officers. (neu)

Die Soldaten antworten den _____ Offizieren.

8. Peter is looking for the brown suitcases. (braun)

Peter sucht die _____ Koffer.

9. The senior officers eat at the elegant restaurant.
(hoch)

Die _____ Offiziere essen in dem eleganten Restaurant.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

NOTES

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

_____ 1. schnellen

_____ 2. sauberen

_____ 3. kleinen

_____ 4. jungen

_____ 5. dunklen

_____ 6. roten

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

_____ 7. neuen

_____ 8. braunen

_____ 9. hohen

START THE TAPE.

NOTES

Say complete German sentences, supplying the appropriate form of the adjectives in parentheses.

1. He buys the beautiful flowers for his wife. (schön)
Er kauft seiner Frau die Blumen.
2. The elegant ladies go to Baden-Baden. (elegant)
Die Damen fahren nach Baden-Baden.
3. We are not living in the expensive apartments. (teuer)
Wir wohnen nicht in den Wohnungen.
4. The teacher is helping the small children. (klein)
Der Lehrer hilft den Kindern.
5. The students are returning the old tapes. (alt)
Die Schüler geben die Tonbänder zurück.
6. The green apples are very inexpensive. (grün)
Die Äpfel sind sehr billig.
7. Hans is giving the poor men money. (arm)
Hans gibt den Männern Geld.
8. The students are washing the dirty cars. (schmutzig)
Die Schüler waschen die Autos.
9. The tired children are lying down on the sofa. (müde)
Die Kinder legen sich aufs Sofa.

10. We converse about the new movies. (neu)

Wir unterhalten uns über die Filme.

The following table summarizes the adjective endings used with singular and plural nouns, in nominative, accusative, and dative cases, following definite articles:

	SINGULAR			PLURAL
	<u>Masculine</u>	<u>Feminine</u>	<u>Neuter</u>	<u>All Genders</u>
Nom.	der alte	die alte	das alte	die alten
Acc.	den alten	die alte	das alte	die alten
Dat.	dem alten	der alten	dem alten	den alten

The exercise on the next page includes all of the adjective forms and uses you have studied up to this point.

Fill in the blanks with the proper form of the adjective shown in parentheses.

1. They like to stay in the elegant spas. (elegant)
Sie wohnen gern in den _____ Kurorten.
2. The young man is attending the university in Munich. (jung)
Der _____ Mann studiert in München.
3. Hans is giving the nice girl the book. (nett)
Hans gibt dem _____ Mädchen das Buch.
4. They live in the tall houses there. (hoch)
Sie wohnen in den _____ Häusern dort.
5. The student from America is intelligent. (intelligent)
Die Schülerin aus Amerika ist _____.
6. The mother is washing the little child. (klein)
Die Mutter wäscht das _____ Kind.

7. We are helping the friendly neighbors. (freundlich)

Wir helfen den _____ Nachbarn.

8. Do you know the interesting book? (interessant)

Kennen Sie das _____ Buch?

9. Hans is writing the new teacher a letter. (neu)

Hans schreibt der _____ Lehrerin einen Brief.

10. They don't drink the cheap wine. (billig)

Sie trinken den _____ Wein nicht.

11. Peter is helping the old man across the street. (alt)

Peter hilft dem _____ Mann über die Strasse.

12. The children are always dirty in the evening. (schmutzig)

Die Kinder sind abends immer _____.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

NOTES

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. eleganten
- _____ 2. junge
- _____ 3. netten
- _____ 4. hohen
- _____ 5. intelligent
- _____ 6. kleine

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 7. freundlichen
- _____ 8. interessante
- _____ 9. neuen
- _____ 10. billigen
- _____ 11. alten
- _____ 12. schmutzig

START THE TAPE.

6. Descriptive Adjectives in Appositions

Study the following English sentences:

Shakespeare, the great English playwright,
was born in Stratford-on-Avon.

We are visiting Chicago, the important
midwestern metropolis.

I spoke to Anita Ekberg, the well-known
actress.

Section 6

Descriptive Adjectives in Appositions

In each of the above sentences, the words with single underlining and those with double underlining are in apposition to each other. That is to say that the words with the double underlining are an expansion of the preceding element and have the same grammatical function within the sentence.

Thus, in the first sentence, the phrase "the great English playwright" is in apposition to the subject of the sentence, "Shakespeare." It follows that "the great English playwright," as an expansion of the sentence subject, would be stated in the nominative case if this sentence were translated into German.

In the second sentence, "the important midwestern metropolis" is in apposition to "Chicago." Do you know what grammatical function "Chicago" plays in this sentence?

In this sentence, "Chicago" is the direct object of the verb "visiting." "The important midwestern metropolis", expanding upon the direct object of the sentence verb, would be stated in the accusative case.

In the third sentence, "Anita Ekberg" is an indirect object, since it tells to whom the speaker talked. "The well-known actress", expanding upon the indirect object to which it refers back, would be stated in the dative case.

As you probably have noticed, appositions serve to provide additional information about the person or thing under discussion but are not a necessary part of the sentence, in the sense that they could be omitted without affecting the grammatical integrity of the sentence. When appositions are included in a given sentence, they take on the same grammatical attributes as the sentence elements to which they refer.

We shall now illustrate this analysis with three German sentences which are sequenced in the same order as the English examples above. Listen and repeat:

1. Köln, die alte Stadt, liegt am Rhein.
(Cologne, the old city, is located on the Rhine.)
2. Wir besuchen Herrn Meyer, den neuen Nachbarn.
(We are visiting Mr. Meyer, the new neighbor.)
3. Wir wohnen in Columbia, der neuen Stadt in Maryland.
(We live in Columbia, the new city in Maryland.)

Fill in the blanks with the correct appositive construction on the basis of the given English. Remember that the appositive adjective must be of the same gender, number, and case as the noun to which it refers.

1. Miss Müller, the new student, comes from America.
(neu)

Fräulein Müller, die _____ Schülerin, kommt aus Amerika.

2. We are greeting Mr. Schmitt, the young teacher.
(jung)

Wir grüssen Herrn Schmitt, den _____ Lehrer.

3. Hans and Karl, the nice students, are helping their friends. (nett)

Hans und Karl, die _____ Schüler, helfen ihren Freunden.

4. They are reading Gone With the Wind, the interesting book. (interessant)

Sie lesen Vom Winde Verweht, das _____ Buch.

5. I am having a good time in Baden-Baden, the elegant spa.

Ich amüsiere mich in Baden-Baden, dem _____ Kurort.

6. Do you know Captain Schneider, the new officer?
(neu)

Kennen Sie Hauptmann Schneider, den _____
Offizier?

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences, supplying the correct appositive constructions on the basis of the given English.

_____ 1. neue

1. Kurt and Maria, the rich neighbors, are selling their house. (reich)

Kurt und Maria, die Nachbarn, verkaufen ihr Haus.

_____ 2. jungen

2. Tomorrow we are visiting Munich, the big city in Bavaria. (gross)

Morgen besuchen wir München, die Stadt in Bayern.

_____ 3. netten

3. Mrs. Meyer, the nice teacher, is getting letters every day. (nett)

Frau Meyer, die Lehrerin, bekommt jeden Tag Briefe.

_____ 4. interessante

4. Helga, the little girl, is well again. (klein)

Helga, das Mädchen, ist wieder gesund.

_____ 5. eleganten

5. Dr. Müller, the rich doctor, is buying himself a sports car. (reich)

Dr. Müller, der Arzt, kauft sich einen Sportwagen.

_____ 6. neuen

6. We live with Mr. Jones, the friendly American. (freundlich)

Wir wohnen bei Herrn Jones, dem Amerikaner.

Adjective Endings After "Kein" Words

This is the second of two lessons on German descriptive adjectives. The preceding lesson covered the forms which adjectives take when they are used after the definite article. In this lesson, you will learn the forms which adjectives take when they follow the "kein" words, especially the indefinite article ein and the possessive adjectives mein, dein, sein, unser, etc.

The module is divided into the following sections:

1. Review of "Kein" Words
2. Descriptive Adjectives (Nominative Singular)
3. Descriptive Adjectives (Accusative Singular)
4. Descriptive Adjectives (Dative Singular)
5. Descriptive Adjectives (Plural of Nominative, Accusative, and Dative Cases)

1. Review of "Kein" Words

You are familiar with the indefinite article ein and its negative form kein, as well as the various possessive adjectives which you studied in **Lessons 3 and 12**. These are called "kein" words because they all follow the same pattern of number, case, and gender endings as does the word kein.

In learning the proper forms of the German descriptive adjectives, it is important for you to clearly distinguish between "der" words and "kein" words because adjectives following "kein" words have different endings in some instances from the endings which they have following "der" words. For example, in:

Der neue Lehrer ist hier.

the adjective adds an -e to the citation form, as you learned in the preceding **Lesson**. When the same adjective, in the same gender, case and number (masculine, nominative, singular) is used after a "kein" word, it takes a DIFFERENT ending:

Ein neuer Lehrer ist hier.

Listen to and repeat the next two sentences:

Der Lehrer ist hier. (-er)
Ein neuer Lehrer ist hier. (-er)

Notice how the ending -er precedes the noun in these two sentences.

In this **Lesson**, we will practice using adjectives following the "kein" words listed below.

<u>kein</u>	(no, not any)
<u>ein</u>	(a, an)
<u>mein</u>	(my)
<u>dein</u>	(your [familiar], addressing one person)
<u>Ihr</u>	(your [formal])
<u>sein, ihr, sein</u>	(his, her, its)
<u>unser</u>	(our)
<u>euer</u>	(your [familiar], addressing several persons)
<u>ihr</u>	(their)

Section 2

Descriptive Adjectives (Nominative Singular)

Study the following sentences:

1. Kein alter Mann ist hier.
2. Ein blauer Bleistift liegt dort.
3. Ein junger Soldat kommt um die Ecke.
4. Unser grüner Stuhl steht im Wohnzimmer.

What is the gender of all the subject nouns above?

What is their case?

What ending is added to adjectives modifying nominative masculine singular nouns following "kein" words?

As you would expect, adjectives such as böse, whose citation form already ends in -e, need add only -r; for example:

Ein böser Hund liegt vor der Tür.

Also, dunkel and teuer drop an -e when -er (or other endings) are added, as mentioned in the preceding module:

Ein dunkler Weg

Ein teurer Mantel

Hoch drops the -c- when endings are added as in:

Ein hoher Berg

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate nominative masculine singular form of the adjectives in parentheses.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences, using the adjectives in parentheses.

1. I don't like your green Volkswagen. (grün)
Euer _____ Volkswagen gefällt mir nicht.
2. Mrs. Schmitt, I like your fresh cake. (frisch)
Frau Schmitt, Ihr _____ Kuchen schmeckt mir.
3. My blue pencil is lying on the table. (blau)
Mein _____ Bleistift liegt auf dem Tisch.
4. A rich doctor lives here. (reich)
Hier wohnt ein _____ Arzt.
5. Our expensive sports car is in the garage. (teuer)
Unser _____ Sportwagen ist in der Garage.
6. The "Feldberg" in the Black Forest is a high mountain. (hoch)
Der "Feldberg" im Schwarzwald ist ein _____ Berg.
7. My new neighbor comes from America. (neu)
Mein _____ Nachbar kommt aus Amerika.
8. His old father is living in Munich. (alt)
Sein _____ Vater wohnt in München.

1. A small suitcase is lying on the back seat. (klein)
Auf dem Rücksitz liegt ein Koffer.
2. His green sports car rides very well. (grün)
Sein Sportwagen fährt sehr gut.
3. My brown suit is very old. (braun)
Mein Anzug ist sehr alt.
4. Our old teacher is drinking his coffee. (alt)
Unser Lehrer trinkt seinen Kaffee.
5. Your good friend is on the phone. (gut)
Ihr Freund ist am Telefon.
6. Here is a new razor. (neu)
Hier ist ein Rasierapparat.
7. Your nice friend is supposed to come along. (nett)
Dein Freund soll mitkommen.
8. Their little boy is at school. (klein)
Ihr Junge ist in der Schule.
9. Mr. Meyer, I like your dark suit. (dunkel)
Herr Meyer, Ihr Anzug gefällt mir.

We will now turn to adjectives used with feminine nouns in the nominative case (following "kein" words). Listen to and repeat the following sentences:

1. Eine alte Dame wohnt hier.
2. Meine kleine Schwester heisst Susan.
3. Deine neue Wohnung gefällt mir.
4. Seine nette Freundin kommt mit.
5. Ihre junge Frau soll natürlich auch kommen.
6. Unsere elektrische Eisenbahn ist kaputt.

Listen to and repeat the next two sentences:

Die Dame wohnt hier. (-e)

Eine alte Dame wohnt hier. (-e)

Notice how the letter -e precedes the noun in these two sentences.

You should now be able to determine the appropriate ending for descriptive adjectives when used with feminine nouns in the nominative case. Say this ending.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. grüner
- _____ 2. frischer
- _____ 3. blauer
- _____ 4. reicher
- _____ 5. teurer
- _____ 6. hoher
- _____ 7. neuer
- _____ 8. alter

The correct ending is -e.

Fill in the blanks, supplying the nominative feminine form of the adjective given in parentheses.

1. We like his clean apartment. (sauber)

Seine _____ Wohnung gefällt uns.

2. My little sister is visiting me. (klein)

Meine _____ Schwester besucht mich.

3. Our new teacher is here. (neu)

Unsere _____ Lehrerin ist hier.

4. Does your expensive watch come from Germany?
(teuer)

Kommt deine _____ Uhr aus Deutschland?

5. Her old mother needs a doctor. (alt)

Ihre _____ Mutter braucht einen Arzt.

6. Our tired daughter wants to go home. (müde)

Unsere _____ Tochter will nach Hause gehen.

7. Isn't there any German newspaper (around)?

Ist hier keine _____ Zeitung? (deutsch)

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences, using the appropriate form of the adjective in parentheses.

1. Our new school is just around the corner. (neu)

Unsere Schule ist gleich um die Ecke.

2. His little sister is allowed to go along. (klein)

Seine Schwester darf mitgehen.

3. A young lady would like to talk to you. (jung)

Eine Dame möchte mit Ihnen sprechen.

4. There is no old church here. (alt)

Hier ist keine Kirche.

5. Their friendly mother greets me every morning.
(freundlich)

Ihre Mutter grüsst mich jeden Morgen.

6. Your nice sister is helping us. (nett)

Deine Schwester hilft uns.

7. Hans and Inge, your black cat is in our garden.
(schwarz)

Hans und Inge, eure Katze ist in unserem Garten.

8. My new watch is already broken. (neu)

Meine Uhr ist schon kaputt.

9. A friendly lady opens the door for me.
(freundlich)

Eine Dame öffnet mir die Tür.

Listen to and repeat the following sentences:

1. Ein rotes Buch liegt auf dem Tisch.
2. Kein grosses Schiff fährt auf dem Fluss.
3. Ihr kleines Kind ist in der Schule.
4. Euer neues Haus gefällt mir.

Listen to and repeat the next two sentences:

Das Buch liegt auf dem Tisch. (-[a]s)

Ein rotes Buch liegt auf dem Tisch. (-[e]s)

Notice how the ending -s precedes the noun "Buch" in these two sentences.

What is the gender and case of each of the noun subjects above, and what ending is shown by the corresponding adjective?

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. saubere
- _____ 2. kleine
- _____ 3. neue
- _____ 4. teure
- _____ 5. alte
- _____ 6. müde
- _____ 7. deutsche

They are all neuter nouns in the nominative case, and the correct adjective ending is -es.

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate nominative neuter form of the adjectives given in parentheses.

1. His old car runs slowly. (alt)

Sein _____ Auto fährt langsam.

2. Our small child doesn't go to school yet. (klein)

Unser _____ Kind geht noch nicht zur Schule.

3. In winter a warm breakfast tastes good. (warm)

Im Winter schmeckt ein _____ Frühstück gut.

4. My new bicycle is already broken. (neu)

Mein _____ Fahrrad ist schon kaputt.

5. A tired child must sleep. (müde)

Ein _____ Kind muss schlafen.

6. Your big luggage isn't here yet. (gross)

Ihr _____ Gepäck ist noch nicht da.

7. Your small house is very cozy. (klein)

Euer _____ Haus ist recht gemütlich.

8. There is no fresh water around here. (frisch)

Hier ist kein _____ Wasser.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. altes
- _____ 2. kleines
- _____ 3. warmes
- _____ 4. neues
- _____ 5. müdes
- _____ 6. grosses
- _____ 7. kleines
- _____ 8. frisches

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences, supplying the nominative neuter singular form of the adjectives given in parentheses.

- 1. A nice girl is sitting next to me. (nett)
Ein Mädchen sitzt neben mir.
- 2. His blue sofa is rather expensive. (blau)
Sein Sofa ist ziemlich teuer.
- 3. Our new house is very beautiful. (neu)
Unser Haus ist sehr schön.
- 4. Is that a German book? (deutsch)
Ist das ein Buch?
- 5. No cheap knife cuts well. (billig)
Kein Messer schneidet gut.
- 6. There is a new car. (neu)
Dort ist ein Auto.
- 7. I like your cozy living room. (gemütlich)
Euer Wohnzimmer gefällt mir.
- 8. Her expensive car doesn't drive well. (teuer)
Ihr Auto fährt nicht gut.

You have seen that the nominative case forms of adjectives following "kein" words are different for all three genders. These endings are:

Masculine: -er

Feminine: -e

Neuter: -es

The next two exercises combine all three genders in the nominative singular.

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate form of the adjectives given in parentheses.

1. That is an old house. (alt)

Das ist ein _____ Haus.

2. The book here is not interesting. (interessant)

Das hier ist kein _____ Buch.

3. A nice waiter is pouring us wine. (nett)

Ein _____ Kellner schenkt uns Wein ein.

4. Our small child has to stay at home today. (klein)

Unser _____ Kind muss heute zu Hause bleiben.

5. Their new teacher is very friendly. (neu)

Ihre _____ Lehrerin ist sehr freundlich.

6. Your expensive car goes very fast. (teuer)

Dein _____ Auto fährt sehr schnell.

7. Mr. Meyer, your small boy eats a lot. (klein)

Herr Meyer, Ihr _____ Junge isst viel.

8. Her black cat always runs through our garden. (schwarz)

Ihre _____ Katze läuft immer durch unseren Garten.

9. Is your green sports car standing in the garage? (grün)

Steht euer _____ Sportwagen in der Garage?

10. My inexpensive suit is still in the suitcase. (billig)

Mein _____ Anzug ist noch im Koffer.

11. His small brother is playing in front of the door. (klein)

Sein _____ Bruder spielt vor der Tür.

12. Is your rich friend still on vacation? (reich)

Ist eure _____ Freundin immer noch auf Urlaub?

13. Their new baby does not want to eat. (neu)

Ihr _____ Baby will nicht essen.

14. My tired girl friend is drinking coffee. (müde)

Meine _____ Freundin trinkt Kaffee.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. altes
- _____ 2. interessantes
- _____ 3. netter
- _____ 4. kleines
- _____ 5. neue
- _____ 6. teures
- _____ 7. kleiner
- _____ 8. schwarze

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 9. grüner
- _____ 10. billiger
- _____ 11. kleiner
- _____ 12. reiche
- _____ 13. neues
- _____ 14. müde

START THE TAPE.

Say the German, using the appropriate form of the adjectives in parentheses. Note that all three genders are used.

1. His rich father is buying him a sports car. (reich)
Sein Vater kauft ihm einen Sportwagen.
2. On the picture there is a high mountain. (hoch)
Dort auf dem Bild ist ein Berg.
3. Is your friendly teacher instructing today? (freundlich)
Gibt eure Lehrerin heute Unterricht?
4. You are not a small child! (klein)
Du bist doch kein Kind!
5. Is your nice girl friend from America? (nett)
Ist deine Freundin aus Amerika?
6. A new house is always expensive. (neu)
Ein Haus ist immer teuer.

7. My green coat is too long. (grün)
Mein Mantel ist zu lang.
8. Your small living room is very cozy. (klein)
Euer Wohnzimmer ist sehr gemütlich.
9. Is your new house still not ready? (neu)
Ist euer Haus immer noch nicht fertig?
10. He doesn't like any cheap wine. (billig)
Kein Wein schmeckt ihm.
11. His (the child's) red ball is lying on the roof. (rot)
Sein Ball liegt auf dem Dach.
12. Our old grandmother is living with us. (alt)
Unsere Grossmutter wohnt bei uns.
13. I don't like her dark apartment. (dunkel)
Ihre Wohnung gefällt mir nicht.

NOTES

Study the following three sentences:

1. Wir grüssen unseren neuen Lehrer.
2. Wir grüssen unsere neue Lehrerin.
3. Wir verkaufen unser neues Haus.

You will note that all three of the underlined adjectives are in the accusative case because the corresponding nouns are in the accusative case (here, because they are the direct objects of the verb).

Section 3

Descriptive Adjectives (Accusative Singular)

The appropriate adjective endings are different for each of the three genders: -en for the masculine, -e for the feminine, and -es for the neuter.

As you notice, the accusative adjective endings following "kein" words in the feminine and neuter genders are identical to those in the nominative case. In the masculine gender, however, the accusative adjective ending after "kein" words differs from the nominative ending. It is -en, the same ending which the definite article takes when in the same position.

Listen to and repeat these two sentences:

Wir grüssen den Lehrer. (-en)

Wir grüssen unseren neuen Lehrer. (-en)

Since you are by now quite used to the general principles involved, you will not be asked to practice each gender separately at this point but rather to work with exercises combining all three genders in the accusative case. Study the accusative endings shown above, then turn the page.

Fill in the blanks, using the appropriate accusative singular form of the adjectives in parentheses. Note that all three genders are used.

1. We say hello to his nice mother. (nett)

Wir grüssen seine _____ Mutter.

2. I never travel without my big suitcase. (gross)

Ich reise nie ohne meinen _____ Koffer.

3. Can you lend me your new book? (neu)

Kannst du mir dein _____ Buch leihen?

4. Don't forget your red pencil! (rot)

Vergiss deinen _____ Bleistift nicht!

5. Do you still have your old apartment? (alt)

Habt ihr immer noch eure _____ Wohnung?

6. We buy flowers for our good mother. (gut)

Wir kaufen Blumen für unsere _____ Mutter.

7. We often phone our friendly neighbor. (freundlich)

Wir rufen unseren _____ Nachbarn oft an.

8. He doesn't like any dark beer. (dunkel)

Er mag kein _____ Bier.

9. I'm buying myself an expensive suit. (teuer)

Ich kaufe mir einen _____ Anzug.

10. They don't know their new neighbor yet. (neu)

Sie kennen ihren _____ Nachbarn noch nicht.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

NOTES

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

_____ 10. neuen

START THE TAPE.

NOTES

- _____ 1. nette
- _____ 2. grossen
- _____ 3. neues
- _____ 4. roten
- _____ 5. alte
- _____ 6. gute
- _____ 7. freundlichen
- _____ 8. dunkles
- _____ 9. teuren

Say complete German sentences, supplying the appropriate accusative singular form of the adjectives in parentheses. Note that all three genders are used.

1. She is buying a present for her friendly teacher. (freundlich)

Sie kauft ein Geschenk für ihre Lehrerin.

2. Paul and Fritz are greeting their old teacher. (alt)

Paul und Fritz grüssen ihren Lehrer.

3. Do you still have your expensive house? (teuer)

Habt ihr noch immer euer Haus?

4. We don't have a nice neighbor. (nett)

Wir haben keinen Nachbarn.

5. Bring along your small child! (klein)

Bring dein Kind mit!

6. We want to take our big suitcase along. (gross)

Wir wollen unseren Koffer mitnehmen.

7. Was your last test difficult? (letzte)

War eure Prüfung schwer?

8. Maria brings her new friend along. (neu)

Maria bringt ihre Freundin mit.

The table below summarizes the endings for nominative and accusative case adjectives following "kein" words:

	<u>Masculine</u>	<u>Feminine</u>	<u>Neuter</u>
Nominative:	kein <u>alter</u>	keine <u>alte</u>	kein <u>altes</u>
Accusative:	keinen <u>alten</u>	keine <u>alte</u>	kein <u>altes</u>

The following exercise combines nominative and accusative case adjectives in all three genders.

NOTES

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate form of the adjective given in parentheses.

1. My small sister is at school. (klein)
Meine _____ Schwester ist in der Schule.
2. Are you selling your old car? (alt)
Verkauft ihr euer _____ Auto?
3. Give me your red pencil! (rot)
Gib mir deinen _____ Bleistift!
4. In the evening, he likes to read a good book. (gut)
Abends liest er gern ein _____ Buch.
5. Our little boy can already walk. (klein)
Unser _____ Junge kann schon laufen.
6. They buy flowers for their nice teacher. (nett)
Sie kaufen Blumen für ihre _____ Lehrerin.

7. She calls her old friend every week. (alt)
Sie ruft ihren _____ Freund jede Woche an.
8. His expensive sports car is already wrecked. (teuer)
Sein _____ Sportwagen ist schon kaputt.
9. May I show you an interesting picture? (interessant)
Darf ich Ihnen ein _____ Bild zeigen?
10. I can't find any German newspaper. (deutsch)
Ich kann keine _____ Zeitung finden.
11. Her tired child would like to sleep. (müde)
Ihr _____ Kind möchte gern schlafen.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

NOTES

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

_____ 1. kleine

_____ 2. altes

_____ 3. roten

_____ 4. gutes

_____ 5. kleiner

_____ 6. nette

_____ 7. alten

_____ 8. teurer

_____ 9. interessantes

_____ 10. deutsche

_____ 11. müdes

START THE TAPE.

NOTES

Descriptive Adjectives (Dative Singular)

The proper ending for descriptive adjectives in the dative case following "kein" words is -en in all three genders. (This is the same ending, incidentally, as used for all dative case adjectives following "der" words.)

Listen to and repeat the following sentences, noticing the -en ending of the descriptive adjective and also the reason for using the dative case in each instance (indirect object, preposition or verb requiring the dative.)

1. Ich leihe einem netten Mann das Buch.
2. Wir zeigen einer freundlichen Lehrerin das Bild.
3. Hans gibt einem schönen Mädchen die Blume.
4. Wir essen in keinem schmutzigen Restaurant.
5. Herr und Frau Meyer helfen ihrem neuen Nachbarn.
6. Wir wohnen immer noch in unserer alten Wohnung.

Fill in the blanks, using the dative singular form of the adjectives given in parentheses. Note that all three genders are used.

1. Hans, are you coming with your new car? (neu)
Hans, kommst du mit deinem _____ Auto?
2. We are helping our young teacher. (jung)
Wir helfen unserem _____ Lehrer.
3. I don't drink out of a dirty cup. (schmutzig)
Ich trinke aus keiner _____ Tasse.
4. In our beautiful city there is much to see. (schön)
In unserer _____ Stadt gibt es viel zu sehen.
5. Before our long vacation we are very tired. (lang)
Vor unserem _____ Urlaub sind wir sehr müde.
6. They don't live in a modern house. (modern)
Sie wohnen in keinem _____ Haus.
7. The lady is getting out of her elegant sports car. (elegant)
Die Dame steigt aus ihrem _____ Sportwagen.
8. He never eats at a cheap restaurant. (billig)
Er isst nie in einem _____ Restaurant.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

_____ 1. neuen

_____ 2. jungen

_____ 3. schmutzigen

_____ 4. schönen

_____ 5. langen

_____ 6. modernen

_____ 7. eleganten

_____ 8. billigen

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences, supplying the dative singular form of the adjectives in parentheses. Note that all three genders are used.

1. Mother is thanking our nice neighbor for his help. (nett)

Mutter dankt unserem Nachbarn für seine Hilfe.

2. He is always getting money from his rich grandmother. (reich)

Er bekommt immer Geld von seiner Grossmutter.

3. We give our friendly teacher the picture. (freundlich)

Wir geben unserer Lehrerin das Bild.

4. I am giving a beautiful girl flowers. (schön)

Ich schenke einem Mädchen Blumen.

5. Why don't you play with your small boy? (klein)

Warum spielst du nicht mit deinem Jungen?

6. Hans, do you sometimes converse with your new neighbor? (neu)

Hans, unterhältst du dich manchmal mit eurem Nachbarn?

7. We like to sit in our cozy living room. (gemütlich)

Wir sitzen gern in unserem Wohnzimmer.

8. Inge is helping her tired child. (müde)

Inge hilft ihrem Kind.

You have now practiced sentences using singular descriptive adjectives following "kein" words, in nominative, dative, and accusative cases. By way of review, the following table may be helpful:

	<u>Masculine</u>	<u>Feminine</u>	<u>Neuter</u>
Nominative:	kein <u>alter</u>	keine <u>alte</u>	kein <u>altes</u>
Accusative:	keinen <u>alten</u>	keine <u>alte</u>	kein <u>altes</u>
Dative:	keinem <u>alten</u>	keiner <u>alten</u>	keinem <u>alten</u>

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate form of the adjective given in parentheses.

1. Our new teacher comes from Munich. (neu)

Unsere _____ Lehrerin kommt aus München.

2. We are helping our tired father. (müde)

Wir helfen unserem _____ Vater.

3. They don't live in a beautiful house. (schön)

Sie wohnen in keinem _____ Haus.

4. Hans, do you still have your German sports car?

Hans, hast du noch deinen _____ (deutsch) Sportwagen?

5. We would like to eat in a good restaurant. (gut)

Wir möchten gern in einem _____ Restaurant essen.

6. Bring your little sister along! (klein)

Bring deine _____ Schwester mit!

7. She is meeting her old teacher. (alt)

Sie trifft sich mit ihrer _____ Lehrerin.

8. They like to sit in their cozy living room. (gemütlich)

Sie sitzen gern in ihrem _____ Wohnzimmer.

9. The student greets his nice teacher. (nett)

Der Schüler grüsst seinen _____ Lehrer.

10. I like your new car. (neu)

Ihr _____ Auto gefällt mir gut.

11. Why don't you like cold milk? (kalt)

Warum magst du keine _____ Milch?

12. She is living in a very beautiful house. (schön)

Sie wohnt in einem sehr _____ Haus.

13. We are giving the teacher our new book. (neu)

Wir geben dem Lehrer unser _____ Buch.

14. Today Karl is coming back from his long vacation. (lang)

Karl kommt heute von seinem _____ Urlaub zurück.

15. May I look at your interesting clock? (interessant)

Darf ich mir deine _____ Uhr ansehen?

16. I like his intelligent question. (intelligent)

Mir gefällt seine _____ Frage.

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

_____ 1. neue

_____ 2. müden

_____ 3. schönen

_____ 4. deutschen

_____ 5. guten

_____ 6. kleine

_____ 7. alten

_____ 8. gemütlichen

_____ 9. netten

_____ 10. neues

_____ 11. kalte

_____ 12. schönen

_____ 13. neues

_____ 14. langen

_____ 15. interessante

_____ 16. intelligente

START THE TAPE.

Descriptive Adjectives (Plural of
Nominative, Accusative, and Dative Cases)

The plural ending for adjectives following "kein" words, in all genders and cases, is the same as the plural ending for adjectives following "der" words, that is, -en.

Say complete German sentences, using the appropriate plural form of the adjectives shown in parentheses.

1. I am selling my old books. (alt)
Ich verkaufe meine Bücher.
2. We take his heavy suitcases to his room. (schwer)
Wir bringen seine Koffer auf sein Zimmer.
3. Our new neighbors are visiting us. (neu)
Unsere Nachbarn besuchen uns.
4. Do you still have your black cats? (schwarz)
Habt ihr noch eure Katzen?
5. Where do you buy your expensive suits? (teuer)
Wo kauft ihr eure Anzüge?

6. She brings her small children something to drink. (klein)
Sie bringt ihren Kindern etwas zu trinken.
7. We give flowers to our nice teachers. (nett)
Wir geben unseren Lehrerinnen Blumen.
8. They put their green plants at the window. (grün)
Sie stellen ihre Pflanzen ans Fenster.
9. There are no tall buildings in our town. (hoch)
In unserer Stadt gibt es keine Gebäude.

NOTES

LESSON 17

Sequence of Objects

In this **lesson**, you will learn the proper word order for sentences which contain both a dative case object (as you recall, this is the indirect object) and an accusative case object (which is the direct object).

1. Sentences with Two Noun Objects
2. Sentences with One Noun Object and One Pronoun Object
3. Sentences with Two Pronoun Objects

In **Lesson 6**, you learned to use German sentences which contain both a dative noun object and an accusative noun object. By way of review, consider the following sentence:

Die Mutter schenkt ihrer Tochter einen Mantel.

(The mother is giving her daughter a coat.)

In what two cases are the underlined words, and why?

The words with double underlining (einen Mantel) are in the accusative case because they are the direct object of the verb schenkt. The words with single underlining (der Tochter) are in the dative case because they are the indirect object.

Note that both Mantel and Tochter are NOUNS. Thus, in the sentence:

Die Mutter schenkt ihrer Tochter einen Mantel.

we say that there are two noun objects: one accusative noun object and one dative noun object.

When a single sentence contains two noun objects, one accusative and one dative, the usual word order is for the dative noun object to precede the accusative noun object. You have already practiced this "dative-first" rule in various exercises in **Lesson 6**. For review, listen to and repeat the following sentences. Note that in all cases both the dative and accusative objects are nouns.

1. Der Schüler gibt dem Lehrer das Buch.

(The student gives the book to the teacher.)

2. Frau Müller kauft ihrer Tochter ein Fahrrad.

(Mrs. Müller is buying her daughter a bicycle.)

3. Wir zeigen dem Herrn den Weg.

(We show the gentleman the way.)

4. Er öffnet dem Kind die Tür.

(He opens the door for the child.)

5. Kauft sie ihrem Freund ein Geschenk?

(Is she buying her boy friend a present?)

6. Bringt der Kellner dem Soldaten den Wein?
(Is the waiter bringing the wine to the soldier?)
7. Die Mutter gibt dem Kind jetzt die Milch.
(The mother is now giving the child the milk.)
8. Herr Meyer schreibt seiner Frau jeden Tag einen Brief.
(Mr. Meyer is writing a letter to his wife every day.)

Occasionally, words and phrases such as jetzt, heute, schon, gern, jeden Tag may be inserted between the dative and accusative noun objects (as in sentences 7 and 8 above). The presence of such words or phrases does not affect the "dative-first" sequence of the two objects.

You should also note that English equivalents of "two-noun-object" sentences do not always parallel the German word order. For example, the German sentence:

Er schreibt seiner Freundin einen Brief.

could be rendered in English as either:

He is writing his girl friend a letter.
(parallel order)

or:

He is writing a letter to his girl friend.
(non-parallel order)

Regardless of the English word order, the corresponding German sentence follows the "dative-first" order.

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate noun objects on the basis of the given English.

- She is writing her mother a letter.
Sie schreibt _____.
- Hans is giving the picture to his girl friend tonight.
Hans schenkt _____ heute abend _____.
- Mr. Müller buys a ball for his children.
Herr Müller kauft _____.
- We sell our sofa to our neighbor.
Wir verkaufen _____.
- Is Peter bringing his father the newspaper?
Bringt Peter _____?
- The waiter is pouring my father the wine.
Der Kellner schenkt _____ ein.
- We are sending our friends a letter.
Wir schicken _____.
- Maria, give the newspapers to your teacher (masc.)!
Maria, gib _____!

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. ihrer Mutter einen Brief
- _____ 2. seiner Freundin
_____ das Bild
- _____ 3. seinen Kindern einen Ball
- _____ 4. unserem Nachbarn unser Sofa
- _____ 5. seinem Vater die Zeitung
- _____ 6. meinem Vater den Wein
- _____ 7. unseren Freunden einen Brief
- _____ 8. deinem Lehrer die Zeitungen

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences on the basis of the given English.

1. Hans is giving his teacher [masc.] his book.
Hans gibt
2. They are showing their apartment to their friends.
Sie zeigen
3. She buys her son a car. [use Auto]
Sie kauft
4. Mr. Meyer, today we are showing your wife the town.
Herr Meyer, wir zeigen heute
5. We are bringing along the newspaper for the neighbor.
Wir bringen mit.
6. He is lending his girl friend the car. [use Auto]
Er leiht
7. Mrs. Müller, are you buying your daughter a dress?
Frau Müller, kaufen Sie?

In the preceding section, you practiced sentences in which both the dative and accusative objects were nouns, and to which the "dative-first" principle applied.

When one of the objects is a pronoun, the "dative-first" sequence does NOT apply. Instead, the pronoun object, regardless of whether it is the dative object or the accusative object, precedes the noun object. Consider the previously used sentence:

Die Mutter schenkt ihrer Tochter den Mantel.

(The mother is giving her daughter the coat.)
("Dative-first" order)

Section 2

Sentences with One Noun

Object and One Pronoun Object

Now suppose that the speaker wished to use the accusative pronoun object ihn instead of the accusative noun object den Mantel. Since this would result in a sentence containing one noun object (ihrer Tochter) and one pronoun (ihn), the pronoun object would come before the noun object:

Die Mutter schenkt ihn ihrer Tochter.

(The mother is giving it [the coat] to her daughter.)

If the speaker wished to use the dative pronoun object ihr instead of the dative noun object ihrer Tochter (in other words, to say the German equivalent of "The mother is giving her [her daughter] the coat," the pronoun object would again come before the noun object:

Die Mutter schenkt ihr den Mantel.

Rewrite the German sentence, replacing the underlined noun object by the appropriate pronoun object, using the "pronoun-object-first" rule. For example:

You see: Helga schenkt ihrem Freund das Buch.

You write: Helga schenkt es ihrem Freund.

1. Hans bringt dem Vater die Zeitung.

Hans bringt _____.

2. Er gibt der Dame den Koffer.

Er gibt _____.

3. Ich schicke meinen Schwestern heute die Geschenke.

Ich schicke _____ heute _____.

4. Peter leiht dem Soldaten das Fahrrad.

Peter leiht _____.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

5. Zeigt ihr dem Freund die Stadt?

Zeigt ihr _____?

6. Sie bringt dem Vater das Bier.

Sie bringt _____.

7. Wir verkaufen Herrn Müller den Sportwagen.

Wir verkaufen _____.

8. Sie zeigen dem Soldaten gern den Weg.

Sie zeigen _____ gern _____.

9. Sie kauft ihrer Tochter eine Uhr.

Sie kauft _____.

10. Herr Meyer schenkt seinem Sohn den Fussball.

Herr Meyer schenkt _____.

11. Zieh dem Kind den Mantel an!

Zieh _____ an!

12. Maria schenkt dem Nachbarn Kaffee ein.

Maria schenkt _____ ein.

13. Wir zeigen unseren Freunden die Kirchen.

Wir zeigen _____.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

In summary, the "pronoun-object-first" rule applies whenever one of the two objects is a pronoun; it makes no difference whether the pronoun object is in the dative or accusative case.

The following sentences will help you review accusative and dative pronoun forms before beginning the exercises on word order. Listen and repeat, noticing the pronoun forms and the English translations:

ACCUSATIVE

1. Ich sehe den Mann. Ich sehe ihn.
(I see the man.) (I see him.)
2. Wir kennen die Dame. Wir kennen sie.
(We know the lady.) (We know her.)
3. Er grüsst das Kind. Er grüsst es.
(He is greeting the child.) (He is greeting it.)
4. Sie kaufen die Zeitungen. Sie kaufen sie.
[all genders]
(They are buying the newspapers.) (They are buying them.)

DATIVE

1. Ich helfe dem Mann. Ich helfe ihm.
(I help the man.) (I help him.)
2. Sie glaubt der Mutter. Sie glaubt ihr.
(She believes the mother.) (She believes her.)

3. Er schreibt dem Kind. Er schreibt ihm.
(He is writing the child.) (He is writing him.)
4. Wir danken den Damen. Wir danken ihnen.
[all genders]
(We thank the ladies.) (We thank them.)

Study these forms further if you wish, then turn the page for exercises on word order.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. ihm die Zeitung
- _____ 2. ihn der Dame
- _____ 3. sie meinen
Schwestern
- _____ 4. es dem Soldaten
- _____ 5. ihm die Stadt
- _____ 6. es dem Vater
- _____ 7. ihm den Sportwagen
- _____ 8. ihm den Weg
- _____ 9. ihr eine Uhr
- _____ 10. ihn seinem Sohn

- _____ 11. ihn dem Kind
- _____ 12. ihm Kaffee
- _____ 13. ihnen die Kirchen

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences, replacing the underlined noun object by the appropriate pronoun object. Make any necessary changes in word order.

1. Der Lehrer gibt dem Schüler die Zeitschrift.
Der Lehrer gibt
2. Wir leihen unseren Freunden die Bücher.
Wir leihen
3. Zeigt sie dem Soldaten das Bild?
Zeigt sie?
4. Ich leihe meiner Nachbarin manchmal meinen Wagen.
Ich leihe manchmal
5. Inge gibt der Mutter die Adresse.
Inge gibt
6. Wir bringen unseren Kameraden gleich Kaffee.
Wir bringen gleich

7. Wir kaufen dem Jungen den Anzug.

Wir kaufen

8. Herr Müller, schenken Sie Ihrer Frau einen neuen Mantel?

Herr Müller, schenken Sie?

9. Ich verkaufe dem Soldaten mein Fahrrad.

Ich verkaufe

10. Sie kauft ihren Töchtern die neuen Kleider.

Sie kauft

11. Schreibst du Peter heute einen Brief?

Schreibst du heute?

Section 3

Sentences with Two Pronoun Objects

In the preceding sections, you learned the regular word order for sentences containing two noun objects ("dative-first" rule), and the word order for sentences containing one noun object and one pronoun object ("pronoun-object-first" rule). In this section, you will learn the word order for sentences in which both the dative and accusative objects are pronouns.

Suppose that in the sentence:

Die Mutter schenkt ihrer Tochter einen Mantel.

both the dative noun object (ihrer Tochter) and the accusative noun object (einen Mantel) were to be replaced by pronoun objects. (The literal English translation would be "The mother gives her [her daughter] it [a coat].") Or we could say, "The mother gives it to her." When two pronoun objects, one dative and one accusative, are used in a single German sentence, the accusative pronoun object comes first. On the basis of this "accusative-pronoun-object-first" rule, how would you rephrase:

Die Mutter schenkt ihrer Tochter einen Mantel.

using two pronoun objects?

You would say: Die Mutter schenkt ihn ihr, putting the accusative pronoun object first.

Rewrite the following German sentences, replacing the two underlined noun objects by the appropriate pronoun objects, using the "accusative-object-first" rule. For example:

You see: Ich schicke meinem Freund den Brief.

You write: Ich schicke ihn ihm.

1. Hans gibt Helga das Buch.
Hans gibt _____.
2. Sie zeigt den Damen die Kleider.
Sie zeigt _____.
3. Ich kaufe meinem Vater die Uhr.
Ich kaufe _____.
4. Inge bringt Mutter die Zeitung.
Inge bringt _____.
5. Der Vater schenkt seinen Kindern die Fahrräder.
Der Vater schenkt _____.
6. Kaufst du Peter das Geschenk?
Kaufst du _____?
7. Maria, gib Peter den Mantel!
Maria, gib _____!

8. Wir zeigen unseren Kameraden die Briefe.

Wir zeigen _____.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences, changing the underlined noun objects into pronoun objects.

1. Der Vater schenkt seiner Tochter den Volkswagen.
Der Vater schenkt
2. Paul, trägst du dem Herrn den Koffer?
Paul, trägst du?
3. Sie schicken dem Schüler die Einladung.
Sie schicken
4. Hans gibt seiner Freundin die Blumen.
Hans gibt
5. Ich leihe meinen Brüdern meine Lehrbücher.
Ich leihe
6. Peter zeigt seiner Freundin das Auto.
Peter zeigt
7. Hol dem Vater die Zeitung!
Hol!
8. Leihst du deinem Nachbarn das Geld?
Leihst du?

The following exercise continues the "accusative-object-first" rule, using a slightly different format in which the dative object is already given in its pronoun form.

Say the German, changing the underlined noun object into a pronoun object.

1. Mein Freund gibt mir den Stadtplan.
Mein Freund gibt
2. Inge, mach dir das neue Kleid selbst!
Inge, mach selbst!
3. Herr und Frau Meyer sehen sich die Wohnung an.
Herr und Frau Meyer sehen an.
4. Kinder, zieht euch die Mäntel an!
Kinder, zieht an!
5. Hans leiht uns seinen Sportwagen.
Hans leiht
6. Herr Meyer, bringen Sie uns die Zeitung mit?
Herr Meyer, bringen Sie mit?
7. Ich nehme mir das letzte Stück Kuchen.
Ich nehme

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. es ihr
- _____ 2. sie ihnen
- _____ 3. sie ihm
- _____ 4. sie ihr
- _____ 5. sie ihnen
- _____ 6. es ihm
- _____ 7. ihn ihm
- _____ 8. sie ihnen,

The following exercise requires you to form sentences having either a single pronoun object or two pronoun objects. Remember the following two rules:

1. In sentences with one noun object and one pronoun object, the pronoun object comes before the noun object, regardless of case.
2. In sentences with two pronoun objects, the accu-
sative object comes before the dative object.

Rewrite the German sentences, replacing each underlined noun object by the appropriate pronoun object.

1. Wir kaufen unserem Sohn einen Fussball.

Wir kaufen _____.

2. Hans schickt seiner Freundin die Blumen.

Hans schickt _____.

3. Mein Vater kauft mir das Fahrrad.

Mein Vater kauft _____.

4. Der Soldat bringt dem Offizier die Zeitung.

Der Soldat bringt _____.

5. Verkauft er euch das Haus?

Verkauft er _____?

6. Die Kinder schicken der Grossmutter das Geschenk.

Die Kinder schicken _____.

7. Ingrid, schenk Peter ein Glas Wein ein!

Ingrid, schenk _____ ein!

8. Maria, schickst du deinen Kindern den Kuchen?

Maria, schickst du _____?

9. Der Lehrer leiht seinen Schülern seine Bücher.

Der Lehrer leiht _____.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. ihm einen Fussball
- _____ 2. sie ihr
- _____ 3. es mir
- _____ 4. sie dem Offizier
- _____ 5. es euch
- _____ 6. es ihr
- _____ 7. ihm ein Glas Wein
- _____ 8. ihnen den Kuchen
- _____ 9. sie seinen Schülern

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences, changing each underlined object into the appropriate pronoun object.

1. Ich schreibe meiner Mutter einen Brief.
Ich schreibe
2. Peter, bring mir die Zeitung mit!
Peter, bring mit!
3. Maria, kaufst du dir das schöne Kleid?
Maria, kaufst du?
4. Die Mutter gibt den Kindern Kuchen.
Die Mutter gibt
5. Seht euch das Haus an!
Seht an!
6. Zeigt Hans dem Amerikaner sein Haus?
Zeigt Hans?
7. Wir leihen unserem Freund unser Auto.
Wir leihen
8. Der Lehrer zeigt uns die neue Schule.
Der Lehrer zeigt
9. Schenkt der Kellner euch den Wein ein?
Schenkt der Kellner ein?

Verbs Used Like Modals

In **Lesson 9**, you learned the forms and uses of the modal auxiliary verbs können, müssen, dürfen, wollen, mögen, and sollen. In addition to these "true" modal auxiliary verbs, German has a number of verbs which can be used either independently as main verbs or as auxiliary verbs following the modal auxiliary pattern. The most important of these verbs, and their use in modal auxiliary constructions, will be presented in this **Lesson**.

The first section will deal with the verbs sehen, hören, helfen, lernen, and lehren, and the second, with the verb lassen, which has a number of meanings depending on context.

1. Sehen, Hören, Helfen, Lernen, and Lehren (to teach)

Before discussing the modal auxiliary use of the above verbs, it will be useful to review the general pattern of modal auxiliary constructions which you studied in detail in **Lesson 9**.

The two sentences below contrast normal sentence pattern and modal auxiliary pattern:

1. Ich gehe nach Hause. (I am going home.)
2. Ich muss nach Hause gehen. (I must go home.)

Write a brief answer to each of the following questions.

1. Which of these two sentences uses modal auxiliary construction?
-

2. In both sentences, which is the main verb?
-

3. Where is the main verb placed in the second sentence, and in what form does it appear?
-

4. Where is the modal auxiliary verb placed, and in what form does it appear?
-

START THE TAPE.

Sentence 2 (Ich muss nach Hause gehen) uses the modal auxiliary construction.

The main verb in both sentences is gehen.

The main verb is placed at the end of the sentence, and is in the infinitive form. If the verb has a separable prefix, the separable prefix remains fixed to the infinitive (abfahren, mitnehmen, etc.). The modal auxiliary verb (müssen) is placed in the position usually occupied by the main verb. In addition, the modal auxiliary is inflected, that is to say, takes on the verb form appropriate to the subject of the sentence (here, Ich muss).

Rewrite each of the sentences below, adding the modal auxiliary verb shown in parentheses. Make any necessary changes in word form and placement.

1. Hans geht heute abend ins Kino. (wollen)

2. Wir lernen jeden Tag etwas Deutsch. (müssen)

3. Trinkst du abends ein Glas Bier? (dürfen)

The correct answers are:

1. Hans will heute abend ins Kino gehen.
2. Wir müssen jeden Tag etwas Deutsch lernen.
3. Darfst du abends ein Glas Bier trinken?

START THE TAPE.

We will now practice modal auxiliary patterns using the verbs sehen, hören, helfen, lernen, and lehren, which as you know can be used either as main verbs or as modal auxiliaries.

Listen to and repeat the following sentences, noticing the underlined inflected verb, the infinitive of the main verb at the end of the sentence, and the English translation.

1. Wir sehen den Lehrer kommen.

(We see the teacher coming.)

2. Hans hilft mir die Koffer tragen.

(Hans helps me carry the suitcases.)

3. Ich höre die Kinder reden.

(I hear the children talking.)

4. Ingrid lernt Tennis spielen.

(Ingrid is learning to play tennis.)

5. Der Lehrer lehrt die Schüler lesen.

(The teacher is teaching the students to read.)

How would you translate each of the five sentences below into English?

1. Ich sehe die Dame aus dem Haus kommen.
2. Peter und Karl helfen uns das Auto waschen.
3. Die Mutter hört die Nachbarn reden.
4. Du lernst Deutsch sprechen.
5. Die Lehrer lehren die Schüler Deutsch schreiben.

In the following exercises, we will practice modal auxiliary constructions using the following groups of verbs:

1. sehen and hören
2. helfen
3. lernen and lehren

Sehen and hören are verbs pertaining to the senses and are usefully practiced together.

Helfen, when used as modal auxiliary, normally is accompanied by a dative object, just as it is when used as a main verb. For example:

Ich helfe meinem Freund sein Auto waschen.
 DATIVE OBJECT

(I am helping my friend wash his car.)

Lernen and lehren, on the other hand, (like sehen and hören), take accusative objects when used in modal auxiliary constructions:

1. Ich lerne meinen Sportwagen fahren.
 ACCUSATIVE OBJECT
(I am learning how to drive my sports car.)
2. Der Offizier lehrt die Soldaten grüssen.
 ACCUSATIVE OBJECT
(The officer is teaching the soldiers to salute.)

NOTES

Listen to and repeat the following sentences which show the use of sehen and hören as modal auxiliary verbs. In the course of this exercise, you should refresh your memory of the various present tense forms of sehen and hören and also become acquainted with their use in modal auxiliary constructions.

1. Ich sehe die Dame Kaffee trinken.
(I see the lady drinking coffee.)
2. Wir sehen den Omnibus abfahren.
(We see the bus leave.)
3. Hörst du die Schüler Deutsch sprechen?
(Do you hear the students speak German?)
4. Hans sieht die Dame aus dem Auto steigen.
(Hans sees the lady getting out of the car.)
5. Frau Meyer hört ihren Mann nach Hause kommen.
(Mrs. Meyer hears her husband coming home.)
6. Hans und Peter sehen das Auto um die Ecke kommen.
(Hans and Peter see the car coming around the corner.)
7. Ich höre das Telefon klingeln.
(I hear the telephone ringing.)
8. Maria, siehst du die Kinder spielen?
(Maria, do you see the children playing?)

9. Herr Müller, sehen Sie die Dame aus dem Kino kommen?

(Mr. Müller, do you see the lady coming out of the movie theater?)

10. Ich höre den Motor starten.

(I hear the motor starting.)

11. Seht ihr die Herren in die Wirtschaft gehen?

(Do you see the men going into the tavern?)

NOTES

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate form of verbs shown in parentheses.

NOTES

1. Herr Schmidt _____ seine Frau kommen.
(hören)
2. Peter _____ den Kellner das Bier bringen.
(sehen)
3. Ich _____ ihn die Tür öffnen. (hören)
4. Wir _____ den Schüler arbeiten. (sehen)
5. Ich _____ ihn abfahren. (sehen)
6. _____ du das Telefon klingeln? (hören)
7. Inge _____ ihren Bruder zurückkommen. (hören]
8. _____ du die Strassenbahn kommen? (sehen)
9. Max und Otto _____ die Musik spielen.
(hören)
10. Herr Meyer _____ seinen Freund an der Haltestelle stehen. (sehen)
11. _____ ihr das Flugzeug kommen? (hören)
12. Herr und Frau Meyer, _____ Sie Ihren Nachbarn im Garten arbeiten? (sehen)

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

START THE TAPE.

- _____ 1. hört
- _____ 2. sieht
- _____ 3. höre
- _____ 4. sehen
- _____ 5. sehe
- _____ 6. Hörst
- _____ 7. hört
- _____ 8. Siehst
- _____ 9. hören
- _____ 10. sieht
- _____ 11. Hört
- _____ 12. sehen

Say complete German sentences, supplying the appropriate form of the verb shown in parentheses.

1. Mutter Peter abfahren. (sehen)
2. du den Sportwagen in der Garage stehen? (sehen)
3. Wir das Telefon klingeln. (hören)
4. ihr die Kinder aufstehen? (hören)
5. Er seine Freundin das Buch lesen. (sehen)
6. Wir den Soldaten zurückkommen. (sehen)
7. Sie das Kind in den Garten laufen? (sehen)
8. Die Mutter ihren Sohn aus dem Haus gehen. (hören)
9. ihr ihn die Zigarre rauchen? (sehen)
10. du die Musik spielen? (hören)
11. Sie die Soldaten Fussball spielen? (sehen)

Translate the following English sentences into German, using a form of hören or sehen. Pay particular attention to the word order of the modal auxiliary constructions.

1. I see the gentleman walking into the movie theater.

Ich _____.

2. We hear the teacher talk to the students.

Wir _____.

3. He sees his wife sitting in the restaurant.

Er _____.

4. Do you hear the phone ringing?

_____ du _____?

5. I see Hans drive the car into the garage.

Ich _____.

6. Do you hear the water running?

_____ ihr _____?

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

START THE TAPE.

In modal auxiliary constructions using helfen, there is usually both a dative object and an accusative object. The dative object describes the recipient of the help:

Ich helfe meiner Mutter

Wir helfen ihm

Der Lehrer hilft dem Schüler

while the accusative object describes the type of help which is being given:

Ich helfe meiner Mutter die Küche saubermachen.

Wir helfen ihr den Tisch decken.

Der Lehrer hilft dem Schüler seine Hausaufgaben machen.

In some cases, the dative object may be omitted, but it is implicitly present in the meaning of the sentence:

Wir helfen eine Wohnung suchen.

(We are helping [someone] look for an apartment.)

We will now consider the use of helfen as a modal auxiliary.

Listen to and repeat the following sentences:

1. Inge hilft ihrer Mutter die Küche saubermachen.
(Inge helps her mother clean the kitchen.)
2. Ich helfe dir den Tisch decken.
(I'll help you set the table.)

In what case are the words ihrer Mutter and dir in the above sentences?

In what case are the words die Küche and den Tisch?

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

1. sehe den Herrn ins Kino gehen

2. hören den Lehrer zu den Schülern sprechen

3. sieht seine Frau in dem Restaurant sitzen

4. Hörst das Telefon klingeln

5. sehe Hans das Auto in die Garage fahren

6. Hört das Wasser laufen

Listen to and repeat the following German sentences, noticing the English translation and the dative and accusative objects. (In some sentences, the dative object is omitted.)

1. Ich helfe der Dame die Tür öffnen.
(I help the lady open the door.)
2. Peter, hilfst du Heidi das Buch suchen?
(Peter, are you helping Heidi look for the book?)
3. Wir helfen den Bleistift suchen.
(We help [Hans] look for the pencil.)
4. Inge hilft ihrer Mutter den Tisch decken.
(Inge is helping her mother set the table.)
5. Sie helfen ihren Freunden eine Wohnung suchen.
(They help their friends look for an apartment.)
6. Herr Müller, helfen Sie der Dame ihr Gepäck tragen?
(Mr. Müller, are you helping the lady carry her luggage?)
7. Helft ihr euren Kindern das Haus kaufen?
(Are you helping your children buy the house?)
8. Wir helfen den Leuten ihr Kind suchen.
(We are helping the people find their child.)
9. Paul hilft den Wagen waschen.
(Paul is helping [his father] wash the car.)

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate form of helfen.

1. Wir _____ der Mutter das Auto parken.
2. Inge, _____ du Maria das Kleid machen?
3. Maria _____ ihrem Bruder einen Mantel kaufen.
4. _____ ihr eurem Vater den Rasen schneiden?
5. Ingrid, ich _____ dir gern den Weg finden.
6. Der Lehrer _____ dem Schüler das Lehrbuch suchen.
7. Sie _____ den Kindern das Spiel gewinnen.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

NOTES

- _____ 1. helfen
- _____ 2. hilfst
- _____ 3. hilft
- _____ 4. Helft
- _____ 5. helfe
- _____ 6. hilft
- _____ 7. helfen

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences, using the appropriate form of helfen.

1. Ich dir das Gepäck tragen.
2. Du mir die deutschen Wörter lernen.
3. Karl seiner Freundin die Bücher tragen.
4. ihr den Kindern den Ball suchen?
5. Wir unserem Kameraden den Dialog lernen.
6. Sie ihrem Mann im Garten arbeiten.

Translate the following English sentences into German, using the appropriate form of helfen. Pay particular attention to word order.

NOTES

1. We are helping them look for the child.

Wir _____.

2. I help my father carry the luggage.

Ich _____.

3. Hans, are you helping your wife set the table?

Hans, _____ du _____?

4. Mr. Müller is helping his neighbor wash the car.

Herr Müller _____.

5. Maria, help me clean the kitchen! (use saubermachen)

Maria, _____!

6. Mr. Schmidt, are you helping your students understand the text? (der Text)

Herr Schmidt, _____?
_____?

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

START THE TAPE.

Lernen can either be used with the infinitive form of the main verb alone, as in:

Das Kind lernt laufen.

(The child is learning to walk.)

Die Soldaten lernen fliegen.

(The soldiers are learning to fly.)

or with objects added, as in:

Ich lerne meinen Sportwagen fahren.

(I am learning how to drive my sports car.)

Das Kind lernt sich die Hände waschen.

(The child is learning to wash his hands.)

Sentences with lehren always have objects added, as in:

Der Offizier lehrt den Soldaten das Flugzeug fliegen.

(The officer is teaching the soldier to fly the plane.)

Herr Schmidt lehrt mich Tennis spielen.

(Mr. Schmidt is teaching me how to play tennis.)

Since the present tense forms of lernen and lehren are completely regular, you should be able to go immediately into the following exercises.

1. helfen ihnen das Kind suchen

2. helfe meinem Vater das Gepäck tragen

3., hilfst deiner Frau den Tisch decken?

4. hilft seinem Nachbarn das Auto (den Wagen) waschen

5., hilf mir die Küche saubermachen!

6., helfen Sie Ihren Schülern den Text verstehen?

?

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate forms of lernen or lehren.

NOTES

1. Hans _____ Deutsch sprechen. (lernen)
2. Wir _____ die Kinder lesen und schreiben.
(lehren)
3. Ingrid, _____ du tanzen? (lernen)
4. Herr Müller _____ seinen Sohn Auto fahren.
(lehren)
5. Die Kinder _____ Fussball spielen. (lernen)
6. _____ der Offizier die Soldaten grüssen?
(lehren)
7. Du _____ deinen Bruder schreiben. (lehren)

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. lernt
- _____ 2. lehren
- _____ 3. lernst
- _____ 4. lehrt
- _____ 5. lernen
- _____ 6. Lehrt
- _____ 7. lehrst

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences, using the appropriate form of lernen or lehren.

- 1. Die Lehrerin das Kind lesen. (lehren)
- 2. Otto und Peter Tennis spielen. (lernen)
- 3. du deine Kinder tanzen? (lehren)
- 4. Karl fliegen. (lernen)
- 5. Ich meinen Sohn ein Wörterbuch benutzen. (lehren)
- 6. ihr den schnellen Sportwagen fahren? (lernen)

Translate the following sentences into the appropriate form of lernen or lehren.

1. He teaches his brother to drive a car.

Er _____.

2. She learns to speak German.

Sie _____.

3. The children are learning to read.

Die Kinder _____.

4. I am teaching my child to walk.

Ich _____.

5. Are you learning to play cards?

_____ du _____?

6. The officer teaches the soldiers to salute.

Der Offizier _____.

7. Hans and Inge are learning to dance.

Hans und Inge _____.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

START THE TAPE.

The following exercise combines the modal auxiliary verbs learned so far in this module.

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate form of the verbs shown in parentheses.

1. Hans _____ seinen Bruder nach Hause kommen.
(hören)

2. _____ du Peter seinen Sportwagen waschen?
(helfen)

3. Die Kinder _____ in der Schule richtig sprechen. (lernen)

4. _____ du das Kind auf die Strasse laufen?
(sehen)

5. Wir _____ die Soldaten Deutsch sprechen.
(lehren)

6. Kurt _____ Maria den Wagen parken. (helfen)

7. _____ ihr eure Kinder im Garten spielen?
(sehen)

8. Wir _____ den Omnibus abfahren. (hören)

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

1. lehrt seinen Bruder Auto fahren

2. lernt Deutsch sprechen

3. lernen lesen

4. lehre mein Kind laufen

5. Lernst Karten spielen

6. lehrt die Soldaten grüssen

7. lernen tanzen

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

1. hört

2. Hilfst

3. lernen

4. Siehst

5. lehren

6. hilft

7. Seht

8. hören

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences, supplying the appropriate form of the verb shown in parentheses.

NOTES

1. Ich meiner Mutter die Wohnung saubermachen.
(helfen)
2. ihr das Auto um die Ecke kommen? (sehen)
3. Der Vater seinen Sohn einen Sportwagen fahren.
(lehren)
4. Der Herr der Dame aus der Strassenbahn
aussteigen. (helfen)
5. du das Telefon klingeln? (hören)
6. Ihr in der Schule schreiben. (lernen)
7. du den Herrn ins Restaurant gehen? (sehen)
8. Die Schüler Deutsch verstehen und sprechen.
(lernen)
9. Der Vater seinen Sohn Fussball spielen.
(lehren)
10. Die Mutter ... die Musik spielen. (hören)

Section 2

"Lassen" and "Sich Lassen"

The verbs used like modals which you learned in the preceding section have rather straightforward meanings. However, lassen and its reflexive form, sich lassen, can take on a number of different meanings depending on context.

As a main verb:

1. Ich lasse heute mein Auto zu Hause.
(I'm leaving my car at home today.)

or as a modal auxiliary:

2. Die Frau lässt ihren Mann warten.
(The woman lets her husband wait.)
3. Der Offizier lässt seine Wohnung saubermachen.
(The officer has his apartment cleaned.)
4. Herr Schmidt lässt seine Frau auf Urlaub gehen.
(Mr. Schmidt has his wife take a vacation.)
5. Ich lasse mir morgen die Haare schneiden.
(I'm having my hair cut tomorrow.)
6. Lässt du dich vom Büro abholen?
(Are you being picked up at the office?)

We will first consider the non-reflexive use of lassen as a modal auxiliary.

In modal constructions, the non-reflexive lassen usually conveys one of two meanings:

1. to permit (or let) someone do something:

Der Vater lässt seinen Sohn Bier trinken.
(The father allows his son to drink beer.)

Frau Meyer lässt Ingrid einmal in der Woche ins Kino gehen.

(Mrs. Meyer lets Ingrid go to the movies once a week.)

OR

2. to have someone do something on behalf of the speaker:

Wir lassen morgen den Arzt kommen.
(We are having the doctor come tomorrow.)

Professor Müller lässt sein Auto waschen.
(Professor Müller has his car washed.)

Der Lehrer lässt den Schüler das Buch zumachen.

(The teacher has the student close the book.)

Note that the objects in the above German sentences are all in the accusative case.

In many cases, only a close look at the context in which lassen is being used can indicate whether the notion of "permission" or of "having someone do something" is intended by the speaker. Translate the following sentences into English, attempting to distinguish between the two interpretations.

1. Ich lasse den Nachbarn mein Auto fahren.

2. Der Offizier lässt den Soldaten die Bücher holen.

3. Peter lässt seinen Wagen waschen.

4. Frau Müller lässt ihre Kinder im Garten spielen.

5. Wir lassen unsere Tochter nach Amerika fahren.

6. Lässt du heute den Rasen schneiden?

7. Ich lasse meinen Sohn in Deutschland studieren.

8. Lasst ihr Inge die Küche saubermachen?

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate form of lassen. Note that any objects used are in the accusative case.

1. Herr Meyer, _____ Sie Ihre Frau immer so lange warten?

2. Wir _____ unser Kind auf der Strasse spielen.

3. Der Schüler _____ seinen alten Lehrer grüssen.

4. Frau Müller _____ den Arzt kommen.

5. Hans und Inge _____ das Telefon immer lange klingeln.

6. Inge _____ ihr Kind von der Schule abholen.

7. Hans _____ Paul sein Fahrrad benutzen.

8. Herr und Frau Müller _____ ihre Tochter die Küche saubermachen.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

The correct answers are as follows:

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

1. I am letting the neighbor drive my car.
2. The officer has the soldier pick up the books.
(Conceivably: The officer lets the soldier pick up the books.)
3. Peter is having his sports car washed.
4. Frau Müller lets (allows) her children (to) play in the garden.
5. We are permitting (allowing, letting) our daughter (to) go to America.
6. Are you having the lawn mowed today?
7. I am letting (permitting, allowing) my son (to) study in Germany.
8. Are you having Inge clean the kitchen?

- _____ 1. lassen
- _____ 2. lassen
- _____ 3. lässt
- _____ 4. lässt
- _____ 5. lassen
- _____ 6. lässt
- _____ 7. lässt
- _____ 8. lassen

START THE TAPE.

START THE TAPE.

The present tense forms of lassen are regular except for the du and er forms, which change the stem vowel from a to ä: du lässt; er (sie, es) lässt.

Say complete German sentences, using the appropriate form of lassen.

1. Karl und Otto ihre Freunde warten.
2. Wir gleich einen Arzt kommen.
3. Monika ihr Kind beim Nachbarn spielen.
4. Frau Müller ihren Mann aus der Wirtschaft holen.
5. Ich meinen Wagen waschen.
6. Hans Peter im Spiel gewinnen.
7. du heute den Rasen schneiden?

We will now consider the modal auxiliary use of the reflexive form sich lassen. Listen to and repeat the following sentences, noticing the reflexive construction and the English translation of the sentence.

1. Ich lasse mich rasieren.
(I have myself shaved.)
2. Er lässt sich zum Büro fahren.
(He has himself driven to the office.)
3. Sie lässt sich überzeugen.
(She allows herself to be convinced.)
4. Wir lassen uns nicht stören.
(We do not allow ourselves to be disturbed.)

5. Lasst ihr euch oft einladen?

Do you let yourselves get invited often?

From the above sentences, you will note that sich lassen conveys the same meaning of "permission" or "having something done" characteristic of non-reflexive sentences, but that the action is in some sense directed back at the subject:

"I have myself shaved"

"She allows herself to be invited"

In what case are the reflexive pronouns used in sentences 1 through 5 above?

They are in the accusative case. Note, however, the following sentences, in which the reflexive object is in the dative case. Listen and repeat:

1. Ich lasse mir ein Haus bauen.
(I am having a house built [for myself].)
2. Du lässt dir ein Geschenk geben.
(You have a present given to you.)
3. Er lässt sich die Zeitung bringen.
(He has the newspaper brought to him.)
4. Fräulein Schmidt lässt sich jeden Tag Blumen schicken.
(Miss Schmidt has flowers sent to her every day.)
5. Wir lassen uns unsere Mäntel bringen.
(We have our coats brought [to us].)
6. Ich lasse mir die Haare waschen.
(I am having my hair washed.)
7. Sie (die Soldaten) lassen sich von ihren Freunden helfen.
(They have themselves helped by their friends.)

When the agent in a sentence using sich lassen is stated in the sentence, as in the preceding example (They have themselves helped by their friends), the agent is introduced by the preposition von: von ihren Freunden.

As seen in the preceding sentences, a dative reflexive pronoun is used when the main verb (i.e., the infinitive at the end of the sentence) is a so-called "dative" verb such as helfen, danken (Lesson 4), or when the reflexive pronoun serves as an indirect object:

Ich lasse mir ein neues Buch geben.

(I am having a new book given [to] me.)

(Indirect objects are usually signaled by "to" or "for" in the corresponding English expression.)

In addition, the dative case is used when referring to parts of the body or to putting on or taking off articles of clothing (Lesson 14):

Ich lasse mir die Haare waschen.

(I am having my hair washed.)

Kind, lässt du dir den warmen Mantel anziehen?

(Child, are you having the warm coat put on [by your mother]?)

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate form of sich lassen (both verb and reflexive pronoun). Be sure to use an accusative pronoun or a dative pronoun as required.

1. Wir _____ ein Haus zeigen.
2. Max, _____ du _____ einen neuen Anzug machen?
3. Ich _____ rasieren.
4. Ich _____ ein deutsches Buch schicken.
5. Inge _____ von Peter abholen.
6. Frau Müller _____ eine neue Zeitschrift mitbringen.
7. Ich _____ den Mantel anziehen.
8. Das Kind _____ von seiner Mutter die Hände waschen.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

START THE TAPE.

Say the German, supplying the appropriate form of sich lassen (both verb and reflexive pronoun).

1. Wir zum Kino fahren.
2. Ich zu einem Glas Wein einladen.
3. Die Schüler die langen Haare schneiden.
4. du nach Hause bringen?
5. Maria nie in der Küche sehen.
6. ihr von der Arbeit abholen?
7. Ich jeden Morgen rasieren.
8. Karl und Otto immer bei den Hausaufgaben helfen.
9. Peter durch die alte Stadt fahren.
10. Ich vom Lehrer die neuen Lehrbücher zeigen.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. lassen uns
- _____ 2. lässt dir
- _____ 3. lasse mich
- _____ 4. lasse mir
- _____ 5. lässt sich
- _____ 6. lässt sich
- _____ 7. lasse mir
- _____ 8. lässt sich

Say the German, supplying the appropriate form of sich lassen (both verb and reflexive pronoun).

1. Wir zum Kino fahren.
2. Ich zu einem Glas Wein einladen.
3. Die Schüler die langen Haare schneiden.
4. du nach Hause bringen?
5. Maria nie in der Küche sehen.
6. ihr von der Arbeit abholen?
7. Ich jeden Morgen rasieren.
8. Karl und Otto immer bei den Hausaufgaben helfen.
9. Peter durch die alte Stadt fahren.
10. Ich vom Lehrer die neuen Lehrbücher zeigen.

Write complete German sentences on the basis of the given English.

1. They have the car shown (to themselves).

Sie _____.

2. I am having a glass of water brought (to me).

Ich _____.

3. Are you having yourself invited?

_____ du _____?

4. Are you having your hair cut?

_____ ihr _____?

5. I am being shaved.

Ich _____.

6. The young lady lets flowers be given to her.

Die junge Dame _____.

7. Is father having you [pl., fam.] pick him up?

_____ Vater _____?

8. She is having a dress made.

Sie _____.

9. We are having a new house shown to us.

Wir _____.

10. He is permitting himself to be convinced.

Er _____.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

1. lassen sich das Auto zeigen.

_____.

2. lasse mir ein Glas Wasser bringen.

_____.

3. Lässt dich einladen?

_____?

4. Lasst euch die Haare schneiden?

_____?

5. lasse mich rasieren.

_____.

6. lässt sich Blumen schenken.

_____.

7. Lässt sich von euch abholen?

_____?

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

8. lässt sich ein Kleid machen.

_____.

9. lassen uns ein neues Haus zeigen.

_____.

10. lässt sich überzeugen.

_____.

You are already quite familiar with the definite article der and the forms which it takes according to the gender, number, and case of the noun which it modifies in a given sentence. For example:

Der Mann geht ins Kino.
Die Frau geht ins Kino.
Das Kind geht ins Kino.

shows the three forms which the definite article takes when used with singular masculine, feminine, or neuter nouns in the nominative case.

Ich sehe den Mann.
 Ich sehe die Frau.
 Ich sehe das Kind.

shows the forms which the definite article takes with nouns of various genders in the accusative case. Still other definite article forms are used in the dative case.

Ich helfe dem Mann.
 Ich helfe der Frau.
 Ich helfe dem Kind.

There are a number of other German words which follow the pattern of the definite article. For this reason they are called "der" words. The "der" words which we will study in this lesson are:

<u>dieser</u>	this, that; these, those
<u>jener</u>	that, those (in comparison)

Dieser alte Mann fährt mit der Strassenbahn,
 jener junge Mann fährt mit dem Auto.

(This old man goes by streetcar, that young man goes by car.)

<u>jeder</u>	each, every
<u>mancher</u>	many a, some
<u>solcher</u>	such a, such
<u>welcher</u>	what, which

"Der" Words and Descriptive Adjectives after "Der" Words

In this **lesson**, you will learn the forms and uses of German words such as dieser ("this" or "that"), solcher ("such"), welcher ("which") and others which, along with the definite article (der, die, das), are commonly referred to as "der" words. In addition, you will learn the forms which descriptive adjectives take when they follow "der" words. The **Lesson** is divided into two sections:

1. Dieser and other "Der" Words
2. Adjective Endings after Dieser and Other "Der" Words

We will first practice the use of dieser in its various forms, then do exercises incorporating the other "der" words. (Because of the high frequency of "dieser", the group of "der" words is also known as "dieser" words. However, we will use the term "der" words throughout this lesson.)

Study the following sentences which show the similar endings of der and dieser in the various persons, numbers, and cases:

NOMINATIVE SINGULAR

- Masc. Der Mann ist alt.
Dieser Man ist alt.
- Fem. Die Frau ist schön.
Diese Frau ist schön.
- Neut. Das Kind ist klein.
Dieses Kind ist klein.

ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR

- Masc. Wir sehen den Mann.
 Wir sehen diesen Mann.
- Fem. Er liebt die Frau.
 Er liebt diese Frau.
- Neut. Ich kenne das Kind.
 Ich kenne dieses Kind.

DATIVE SINGULAR

- Masc. Ich helfe dem Mann.
 Ich helfe diesem Mann.
- Fem. Ich antworte der Frau.
 Ich antworte dieser Frau.
- Neut. Ich gebe dem Kind einen Ball.
 Ich gebe diesem Kind einen Ball.

NOMINATIVE PLURAL (all genders)

- Die Männer (Frauen, Kinder) gehen ins Kino.
Diese Männer (Frauen, Kinder) gehen ins Kino.

ACCUSATIVE PLURAL (all genders)

- Wir sehen die Männer (Frauen, Kinder).
 Wir sehen diese Männer (Frauen, Kinder).

DATIVE PLURAL (all genders)

- Ich zeige den Männern (Frauen, Kindern) den Weg.
 Ich zeige diesen Männern (Frauen, Kindern) den Weg.

START THE TAPE.

As you can see from the preceding table, the endings for dieser (and for the other "der" words as well) are the same as those for the definite article, with one minor exception. In situations where the proper definite article form would be das, the corresponding form of dieser is dieses (not * diesas, as you might think). The other "der" words have the same pattern:

das, but: jenes

das, but: jedes, etc.

Say the German, substituting the correct form of dieser in place of the definite article. For example:

You see: Der Sportwagen ist neu.

You say: Dieser Sportwagen ist neu.

1. Den Mann kenne ich nicht.
2. Der Garten ist schön.
3. Inge schenkt der Freundin ihr Bild.
4. Das Buch ist sehr interessant.
5. Die Schüler kommen aus Amerika.
6. Mit dem Auto fahre ich nicht.
7. Kennst du die Frau?
8. Wir helfen den Amerikanern.
9. Wir sehen die Kinder im Garten.
10. Antwortet ihr den schönen Mädchen?

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate form of dieser.

1. Wir fahren gern durch _____ Stadt.
2. Hans wohnt bei _____ Dame.
3. Der Soldat kennt _____ Offizier nicht.
4. Der Soldat liebt _____ Mädchen.
5. _____ Mann fährt oft in Urlaub.
6. Hat _____ Frau Kinder?
7. _____ Damen gehen jeden Tag ins Kino.
8. Glaubt ihr _____ Kindern?
9. Ich trinke nicht aus _____ Glas.
10. _____ Mann grüße ich nicht.
11. _____ Haus gehört uns.
12. Gebt ihr _____ Männern nichts zu essen?

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. diese
_____ 2. dieser
_____ 3. diesen
_____ 4. dieses
_____ 5. Dieser
_____ 6. diese
_____ 7. Diese
_____ 8. diesen
_____ 9. diesem
_____ 10. Diesen
_____ 11. Dieses
_____ 12. diesen

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences, supplying the appropriate form of dieser. For example:

You see: Mann ist reich.

You say: Dieser Mann ist reich.

1. Er liebt Mädchen nicht mehr.
2. Soldat fährt heute in Urlaub.
3. Inge schenkt Kind einen Ball.

4. Schüler glaubt niemand.
5. Herr Müller kennt Herrn nicht.
6. Gehen Kinder schon zur Schule?
7. Wir fahren oft durch Stadt.
8. Peter geht mit Schülerin ins Kino.
9. Dame ist meine Grossmutter.
10. Kindern helfen wir gern.

Earlier in this section, it was indicated that dieser can correspond to either the English "this" or "that." The distinction depends on context and on the point of view of the speaker.

Dieser Wein schmeckt mir nicht.

(I don't like this wine.) (assuming the speaker has the wine close at hand, as in the process of tasting it).

Dieser Wein schmeckt mir nicht.

(I don't like that wine.) (assuming the wine is at some distance from the speaker, as, for example, when the speaker is pointing to a rack of wine bottles in a store).

When the speaker attempts to make a formal comparison of two things, using sentences such as:

"I like this wine but not that wine."

"This man smokes cigars and that man smokes cigarettes."

the word jener is used in the second ("that") part of the comparison. Thus, the preceding English sentences would be rendered in German as:

Dieser Wein schmeckt mir, aber jener Wein schmeckt mir nicht.

Dieser Mann raucht Zigarren, und jener Mann raucht Zigaretten.

In summary, dieser can be used in situations where either "this" or "that" would be used in the corresponding English expression. However, when a "this that" comparison is made, jener is used in the "that" portion of the comparison.

Practice the use of the dieser jener comparison pattern in the following exercise. Remember that jener uses the same case, number and gender endings as dieser and the other "der" words.

Fill in the blanks on the basis of the given English.

1. This woman is going to Cologne, that woman is staying home.

_____ Frau fährt nach Köln, _____ Frau bleibt zu Hause.

2. Hans knows this girl, but he doesn't know that girl.

Hans kennt _____ Mädchen, aber _____ Mädchen kennt er nicht.

3. In this car one sits comfortably, in that car one sits uncomfortably.

In _____ Auto sitzt man gut, in _____ Auto sitzt man schlecht.

4. I believe these children, but I do not believe those children.

_____ Kindern glaube ich, aber _____ Kindern glaube ich nicht.

5. These ladies drink tea, those ladies drink coffee.

_____ Damen trinken Tee, _____ Damen trinken Kaffee.

6. We like to converse with this lady, we don't like to converse with that lady.

Mit _____ Frau unterhalten wir uns gern, mit

_____ Frau unterhalten wir uns nicht gern.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

NOTES

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

NOTES

_____ 1. Diese jene

_____ 2. dieses jenes

_____ 3. diesem jenem

_____ 4. Diesen jenen

_____ 5. Diese jene

_____ 6. dieser jener

START THE TAPE.

Jeder (every, each) and alle (all) follow the usual "der" word endings. Jeder has no plural forms; alle has both singular and plural forms, but only its plural will be used in the following exercises.

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate form of jeder or alle on the basis of the given English.

1. Every child likes to eat cake.

_____ Kind isst gern Kuchen.

2. The soldiers invite all [the] girls.

Die Soldaten laden _____ Mädchen ein.

3. There is a good restaurant in every city.

In _____ Stadt gibt es ein gutes Restaurant.

4. All students want to watch this movie.

_____ Schüler wollen sich diesen Film ansehen.

5. The officer is helping all [the] soldiers.

Der Offizier hilft _____ Soldaten.

6. The teacher talks to each student.

Der Lehrer spricht mit _____ Schüler.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

START THE TAPE.

The following exercise combines the "der" words you have learned so far in this module.

Say the German, using the appropriate form of the required "der" word on the basis of the given English.

1. Hans doesn't go to the movies with every girl.

Hans geht nicht mit Mädchen ins Kino.

2. Do you know this gentleman?

Kennst du Herrn?

3. Peter can find his way around in every city.

Peter findet sich in Stadt zurecht.

4. This lady smokes a lot, that lady doesn't smoke.

.... Dame raucht viel, Dame raucht nicht.

5. I don't believe this man.

Ich glaube Mann nicht.

6. The teacher is nice to each student.

Der Lehrer ist zu Schüler nett.

7. Anna goes out with these students, she doesn't go out with those students.
Anna geht mit Schülern aus, sie geht nicht mit Schülern aus.
8. The soldier salutes all officers.
Der Soldat grüsst Offiziere.
9. This house is big, that house is small.
.... Haus ist gross, Haus ist klein.
10. Helga is writing all [her] friends a picture postcard.
Helga schreibt Freunden eine Ansichtskarte.
11. I don't like that wine.
Ich mag Wein nicht.
12. I like to eat this cake, I don't like to eat that cake.
.... Kuchen esse ich gern, Kuchen esse ich nicht gern.
13. Hans meets these students every day.
Hans trifft sich mit Schülern jeden Tag.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. Jedes
- _____ 2. alle
- _____ 3. jeder
- _____ 4. Alle
- _____ 5. allen
- _____ 6. jedem

Mancher is a "der" word meaning "many a" when used with a singular noun:

Mancher Mann trinkt abends ein Bier.

(Many a man drinks a beer in the evening.)

or "some" when used with a plural noun:

Wir besuchen manche Städte im Dezember.

(We are visiting some cities in December.)

The number, case, and gender endings for mancher are the same as those you have been practicing with the other "der" words dieser, jener, jeder, and alle. The frequency of use of mancher is relatively low in contemporary German, especially the singular "many a" form (which is also infrequent in English).

START THE TAPE.

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate form of mancher on the basis of the given English.

1. Many a man smokes all day long.

_____ Mann raucht den ganzen Tag.

2. Many a child likes to drink milk.

_____ Kind trinkt gern Milch.

3. We are driving through some towns.

Wir fahren durch _____ Städte.

4. He gets letters from many a friend.

Er bekommt von _____ Freund Briefe.

5. Some people don't like to travel.

_____ Leute reisen nicht gern.

6. They make an excursion on many a Sunday.

Sie machen an _____ Sonntag einen Ausflug.

7. In some countries it is always warm.

In _____ Ländern ist es immer warm.

8. I have many a friend in this town.

Ich habe _____ Freund in dieser Stadt.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

Solcher is a "der" word meaning "such," in both singular and plural forms. The gender, number, and case endings which it uses are those of the other "der" words you have studied. Study the following examples:

Solcher Wein ist teuer.

(Such wine is expensive.)

Solche Damen essen gern Kuchen.

(Such ladies like to eat cake.)

Solches Glück!

(Such luck!)

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate form of solcher on the basis of the given English.

1. Such coffee is very strong.

_____ Kaffee ist sehr stark.

2. In such weather we don't go out.

Bei _____ Wetter gehen wir nicht aus.

3. I don't come often through such cities.

Durch _____ Städte komme ich nicht oft.

4. Nobody believes such girls.

_____ Mädchen glaubt niemand.

5. I don't talk to such people.

Mit _____ Leuten spreche ich nicht.

6. Such flowers I like very much.

_____ Blumen habe ich sehr gern.

7. I seldom have such luck.

Ich habe selten _____ Glück.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

NOTES

NOTES

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

_____ 1. Mancher

_____ 2. Manches

_____ 3. manche

_____ 4. manchem

_____ 5. Manche

_____ 6. manchem

_____ 7. manchen

_____ 8. manchen

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

_____ 1. Solcher

_____ 2. solchem

_____ 3. solche

_____ 4. Solchen

_____ 5. solchen

_____ 6. Solche

_____ 7. solchen

START THE TAPE.

Welcher is a "der" word meaning "which," used in interrogative sentences such as:

Welcher Schüler wohnt in diesem Zimmer?

(Which student lives in this room?)

Mit welchen Freunden fahrt ihr nach Deutschland?

(With which friends are you going to Germany?)

Welchem Kind geben Sie das Geschenk?

(To which child are you giving the present?)

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate form of welcher on the basis of the given English.

1. Which friend is coming to pick you up?

_____ Freund kommt dich abholen?

2. With which girl are you going to the movies?

Mit _____ Mädchen gehst du ins Kino?

3. Which of the houses there belongs to you?

_____ von den Häusern dort gehört euch?

4. Which friend are you inviting?

_____ Freund lädst du ein?

5. Which magazines do you read?

_____ Zeitschriften liest du?

6. Which student is going to Germany?

_____ Schülerin fährt nach Deutschland?

7. Which city do you come from?

Aus _____ Stadt kommen Sie?

8. To which man are you giving the book?

_____ Mann gibst du das Buch?

9. Which child are you looking for?

_____ Kind suchen Sie?

10. For which lady are these flowers?

Für _____ Dame sind diese Blumen?

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

_____ 1. Welcher

_____ 2. welchem

_____ 3. Welches

_____ 4. Welchen

_____ 5. Welche

_____ 6. Welche

_____ 7. welcher

_____ 8. Welchem

_____ 9. Welches

_____ 10. welche

START THE TAPE.

NOTES

This exercise combines mancher, welcher, and solcher.
Say complete German sentences on the basis of the
given English.

1. Such beer is good.
.... Bier ist gut.
2. Some soldiers spend their vacation at home.
.... Soldaten verbringen ihren Urlaub zu Hause.
3. With which teacher are you studying German?
Bei Lehrer lernen Sie Deutsch?
4. Many a man makes this trip.
.... Mann macht diese Reise.
5. We don't like to eat in such restaurants.
In Restaurants essen wir nicht gern.
6. She writes me many a letter.
Sie schreibt mir Brief.
7. Through which countries do you want to travel?
Durch Länder wollt ihr reisen?

8. In which city does your father live?
In Stadt wohnt Ihr Vater?
9. We don't want to play with such children.
Mit Kindern wollen wir nicht spielen.
10. She is visiting many a friend.
Sie besucht Freund.
11. Which lady is your mother?
.... von den Damen ist Ihre Mutter?
12. You only get such beer in Munich.
.... Bier bekommt man nur in München.

NOTES

Section 2

Adjective Endings After

"Dieser" and Other "Der" Words

In Lesson 15, you learned that descriptive adjectives following the definite article (der, die, das) take certain endings depending on the gender, case, and number of the noun modified. For example, if the adjective neu were to be inserted in the sentence below in order to modify the noun Sportwagen:

Der Sportwagen fährt gut.

it would take the form neue because Sportwagen is a masculine singular noun in the nominative case.

Der neue Sportwagen fährt gut.

Adjectives which follow dieser or the other "der" words you have studied in this module have exactly the same endings as they do following the definite article.

How would you say "This new sports car runs well"?

You would say: Dieser neue Sportwagen fährt gut.

How would you say: "Every new sports car runs well"?

You would say: Jeder neue Sportwagen fährt gut.

The appropriate endings for adjectives following the definite article, and by the same token, all "der" words, were taught in detail in Lesson 15. However, it will be useful to review these forms briefly, using dieser and other "der" words to precede the descriptive adjective. You will note that the "der" word itself continues to have the same endings as it does when no adjective follows, that is, the endings you practiced in the preceding section. The emphasis in this section will be on the endings which the descriptive adjective assumes following these "der" words.

Adjectives modifying NOMINATIVE case singular nouns (regardless of gender) add the ending -e to the "dictionary" or "citation" form of the adjective, unless, of course, the citation form already ends in -e (müde, böse, etc.).

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate form of the adjective shown in parentheses.

NOTES

1. Every tired child has to go to sleep early. (müde)

Jedes _____ Kind muss früh schlafen gehen.

2. This cheap wine doesn't taste good. (billig)

Dieser _____ Wein schmeckt nicht gut.

3. Which expensive sports car drives the best?
(teuer)

Welcher _____ Sportwagen fährt am besten?

4. This old lady goes by streetcar, that young lady goes by car. (alt - jung)

Diese _____ Dame fährt mit der Strassenbahn,

jene _____ Dame fährt mit dem Auto.

5. Each new student receives a textbook. (neu)

Jeder _____ Schüler bekommt ein Lehrbuch.

6. This rich gentleman lives in California. (reich)

Dieser _____ Herr wohnt in Kalifornien.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

NOTES

_____ 1. müde

_____ 2. billige

_____ 3. teure

_____ 4. alte junge

_____ 5. neue

_____ 6. reiche

START THE TAPE.

Adjectives modifying DATIVE case singular nouns (regardless of gender) add -en (or -n if the citation form already ends in -e).

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate form of the descriptive adjective in parentheses. Note the reason for the use of the dative case in each instance (noun following a verb which requires the dative, dative preposition, or indirect object).

1. In every expensive car is a radio. (teuer)

In jedem _____ Auto ist ein Radio. (das Radio)

2. Peter is nice to each young student. (jung)

Peter ist zu jeder _____ Schülerin nett.

3. To which old lady is he giving the present? (alt)

Welcher _____ Dame gibt er das Geschenk?

4. One eats well in this inexpensive restaurant. (billig)

In diesem _____ Restaurant isst man gut.

5. The teacher helps every new student.

Die Lehrerin hilft jedem _____ Schüler.

6. In which expensive hotel does he live? (teuer)

In welchem _____ Hotel (das Hotel) wohnt er?

7. I drink out of this clean glass, I don't drink out of that dirty glass. (sauber - schmutzig)

Ich trinke aus diesem _____ Glas, aus jenem

_____ Glas trinke ich nicht.

8. We don't want to stay in this cold apartment. (kalt)

In dieser _____ Wohnung wollen wir nicht bleiben.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

NOTES

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

NOTES

_____ 1. teuren

_____ 2. jungen

_____ 3. alten

_____ 4. billigen

_____ 5. neuen

_____ 6. teuren

_____ 7. sauberen
schmutzigen

_____ 8. kalten

START THE TAPE.

Adjectives modifying ACCUSATIVE case singular nouns add -en if the noun is masculine and -e if the noun is feminine or neuter (böse, müde, etc. add only -n in the masculine, and nothing in the feminine or neuter).

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate form of the descriptive adjective in parentheses. Note the reason for the use of the accusative case in each instance (noun following a verb requiring the accusative, accusative preposition, or direct object).

1. We drink this expensive wine, we don't drink that cheap wine. (teuer - billig)

Wir trinken diesen _____ Wein, jenen _____ Wein trinken wir nicht.

2. Hans greets every young lady. (jung)

Hans grüsst jede _____ Dame.

3. Which old gentleman do you want to visit? (alt)

Welchen _____ Herrn wollen Sie besuchen?

4. Do you know this elegant lady? (elegant)

Kennst du diese _____ Dame?

5. We visit every new neighbor. (neu)

Wir besuchen jeden _____ Nachbarn.

6. Are you selling this green sports car? (grün)

Verkauft ihr diesen _____ Sportwagen?

7. Through which beautiful country are you traveling? (schön)

Durch welches _____ Land reisen Sie?

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

NOTES

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

_____ 1. teuren billigen

_____ 2. junge

_____ 3. alten

_____ 4. elegante

_____ 5. neuen

_____ 6. grünen

_____ 7. schöne

START THE TAPE.

The proper ending for adjectives following "der" words and modifying plural nouns is -en, regardless of case and gender. For example:

Manche alten Leute wohnen in Florida.

(Some old people live in Florida.)

Der Lehrer zeigt allen neuen Schülern das Klassenzimmer.

(The teacher shows all the new students the classroom.)

The exercise on the next page uses singular and plural adjective forms in the different genders and cases. Before beginning the exercise, you may wish to review the appropriate endings, which can be summarized as follows:

Singular

NOMINATIVE: -e (all genders)

ACCUSATIVE: -en (masc.); -e (fem. and neut.)

DATIVE: -en (all genders)

Plural

ALL CASES AND GENDERS: -en

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate form of the descriptive adjective in parentheses.

1. Some American students spend their vacations in Europe. (amerikanisch)
Manche _____ Schüler verbringen ihre Ferien in Europa.
2. In every old city there is a beautiful church. (alt)
In jeder _____ Stadt gibt es eine schöne Kirche.
3. Which interesting countries would you like to visit? (interessant)
Welche _____ Länder möchten Sie besuchen?
4. Peter watches all good movies. (gut)
Peter sieht sich alle _____ Filme an.
5. The professor talks to every new student. (neu)
Der Lehrer spricht mit jedem _____ Schüler.
6. We know every inexpensive restaurant in town. (billig)
Wir kennen jedes _____ Restaurant in der Stadt.

7. We don't eat from these dirty plates. (schmutzig)
Wir essen nicht von diesen _____ Tellern.
8. In some old apartments there is no gas heating. (alt)
In manchen _____ Wohnungen gibt es keine Gasheizung.
9. This rich lady spends her vacation in Florida, that poor woman is staying home. (reich - arm)
Diese _____ Dame verbringt ihre Ferien in Florida, jene _____ Frau bleibt zu Hause.
10. Each new student is getting a textbook. (neu)
Jeder _____ Schüler bekommt ein Lehrbuch.
11. These good children may go to the beach, those bad children must stay at home. (gut - böse)
Diese _____ Kinder können an den Strand fahren, jene _____ Kinder müssen zu Hause Bleiben.
12. Such fast sports cars are expensive. (schnell)
Solche _____ Sportwagen sind teuer.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

_____ 1. amerikanischen

_____ 2. alten

_____ 3. interessanten

_____ 4. guten

_____ 5. neuen

_____ 6. billige

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

_____ 7. schmutzigen

_____ 8. alten

_____ 9. reiche arme

_____ 10. neue

_____ 11. guten bösen

_____ 12. schnellen

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences, using the appropriate form of the adjective in parentheses.

1. Paul likes to talk to these young ladies. (jung)
Paul spricht gern mit diesen Damen.
2. I know all [the] elegant stores here. (elegant)
Ich kenne hier alle Geschäfte.
3. The mother is buying each good child a present. (gut)
Die Mutter kauft jedem Kind ein Geschenk.
4. In some old cities there are many churches. (alt)
In manchen Städten gibt es viele Kirchen.
5. These big houses are new, those small houses are old. (gross - klein)
Diese Häuser sind neu, jene Häuser sind alt.
6. He gives each good friend his picture. (gut)
Er gibt jedem Freund sein Bild.

7. The rich lady is helping some poor children. (arm)
Die reiche Dame hilft manchen Kindern.
8. In this new school the windows are big. (neu)
In dieser Schule sind die Fenster gross.
9. In such good schools one learns a lot. (gut)
In solchen Schulen lernt man viel.
10. Which warm coat would you like to take along? (warm)
Welchen Mantel möchtest du mitnehmen?
11. This new book is interesting. (neu)
Dieses Buch ist interessant.
12. Not every big plane can land here. (gross)
Nicht jedes Flugzeug kann hier landen.
13. They are visiting all [the] interesting countries. (interessant)
Sie besuchen alle Länder.

In the next exercise, you will be asked to provide both the "der" word and the descriptive adjective, each with the proper ending. You may wish to review Section 1 of this module before proceeding with this summary exercise.

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate form of the "der" word and the descriptive adjective:

1. We like to eat in such good restaurants. (gut)

Wir essen gern in _____
Restaurants.

2. Some German cities are very old, (deutsch)

_____ Städte sind sehr alt.

3. The doctor is helping these old people. (alt)

Der Arzt hilft _____ Leuten.

4. These rich countries want to help those poor countries. (reich - arm)

_____ Länder wollen _____
_____ Ländern helfen.

5. Ingrid and Hans are inviting all [the] good friends to dinner. (gut)

Ingrid und Hans laden _____
Freunde zum Essen ein.

6. To which old gentleman does the luggage belong? (alt)

_____ Herrn gehört das Gepäck?

7. The students want to eat only from these clean plates. (sauber)

Die Schüler wollen nur von _____
Tellern essen.

8. We help every new neighbor. (neu)

Wir helfen _____ Nachbarn.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.
NOTES

NOTES

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences, filling in the blanks with the appropriate form of the "der" word and the descriptive adjective.

_____ 1. solchen guten

_____ 2. manche deutschen

_____ 3. diesen alten

_____ 4. Diese reichen
jenen armen

_____ 5. alle guten

_____ 6. Welchem alten

_____ 7. diesen sauberen

_____ 8. jedem neuen

1. She is getting letters from some old friends. (alt)
Sie bekommt von Freunden Briefe.

2. There are some interesting cities in Germany.
(interessant)

In Deutschland gibt es Städte.

3. Such elegant restaurants are expensive. (elegant)
.... Restaurants sind teuer.

4. In which old city does your grandfather live?
(alt)

In Stadt wohnt dein Grossvater?

5. We take along these big children to the museum,
those small children we leave at home. (gross -
klein)

Wir nehmen Kinder ins Museum mit,
Kinder lassen wir zu Hause.

6. In which inexpensive restaurant do you always eat?
(billig)

In Restaurant essen Sie immer?

7. These young people come from America. (jung)
.... Leute kommen aus Amerika.

8. We know this old gentleman well. (alt)
Wir kennen Herrn gut.
9. Such green apples don't taste good. (grün)
.... Äpfel schmecken nicht gut.
10. In every old city there is a beautiful church.
(alt)
In Stadt gibt es eine schöne Kirche.

Adjectives Not Preceded by "Der" or "Kein" Words

In Lessons 15, 16, and 19, you learned the forms and uses of descriptive adjectives following the definite article and other "der" words (dieser, jener, solcher, etc.) and following "kein" words (kein, ein, and the possessive adjectives). In this lesson, you will learn the forms and uses of descriptive adjectives which are not preceded by either a "der" word or a "kein" word. The lesson is divided into the following sections:

1. Unpreceded Descriptive Adjectives (Singular and Plural)
2. Appellations, Salutations, and Idiomatic Expressions
3. Adjectives Expressing Quantity

1. Unpreceded Descriptive Adjectives (Singular and Plural)

The term "unpreceded" will be used to refer to adjectives which are not preceded by either a "der" word or a "kein" word. For each of the sentences below, write "P" or "U" in the space provided to indicate whether the adjective is "preceded" or "unpreceded":

1. Heute kaufe ich keine neue Zeitschrift. _____
2. Hans kauft gern alte Autos. _____
3. Wo sind meine braunen Schuhe? _____
4. Dunkles Bier kommt aus Deutschland. _____
5. Mancher amerikanische Schüler lernt Deutsch. _____
6. Der Anzug ist aus gutem Stoff. _____
7. Arme Frauen haben wenig Geld. _____
8. Wir grüssen den neuen Lehrer. _____

START THE TAPE.

The unpreceded sentences are: 2, 4, 6, and 7.

Whenever descriptive adjectives are unpreceded by a "der" word or a "kein" word, they have the same endings as the definite article (or other "der" words) would have when used with the noun in question. Suppose, for example, that you wished to convey the following English sentence in German:

He drinks good wine.

Leaving the adjective aside for the moment, the equivalent German sentence would be:

Er trinkt----Wein.

Is the adjective in question preceded or unpreceded? What is the gender, case, and number of the noun which the adjective modifies?

As you have just learned, the unpreceded adjective has the same ending as the definite article would have when used with the noun Wein in this sentence. Remembering the gender, case, and number of the noun Wein in this sentence, what would be the appropriate definite article form?

The definite article form would be den, as you can see from the sentence Er trinkt [den] Wein.

You should now be able to give the German equivalent for "He drinks good wine." Say the German sentence.

The correct answer is Er trinkt guten Wein.

Say each of the German sentences below, replacing the definite article by the appropriate form of the adjective in parentheses. For example:

You see: Er trinkt den Wein. (gut)

Er trinkt Wein.

You say: Er trinkt guten Wein.

Note that each of the adjectives is unpreceded by a "der" or "kein" word and thus takes the ending of the definite article in the same grammatical context.

1. Hans raucht die Zigaretten. (stark)

Hans raucht Zigaretten.

2. Das Bier ist gut. (deutsch)

.... Bier ist gut.

3. Die Häuser sind teuer. (neu)

.... Häuser sind teuer.

4. Bei dem Licht kann man nicht lesen. (schlecht)

Bei Licht kann man nicht lesen.

5. Der Wein schmeckt ausgezeichnet. (alt)

.... Wein schmeckt ausgezeichnet.

6. Den Kaffee trinke ich nicht. (schwarz)

.... Kaffee trinke ich nicht.

7. Die Schuhe gefallen mir. (braun)

.... Schuhe gefallen mir.

In the exercise on the next page, you will be asked to supply the appropriate form of the unpreceded adjective, without the aid of the corresponding definite article. Before beginning the exercise, you should review the definite article endings shown in the table below, together with the corresponding endings for the unpreceded adjective gut.

NOTES

Singular

	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter
Nominative	der Wein guter Wein	die Milch gute Milch	das Bier gutes Bier
Accusative	den Wein guten Wein	die Milch gute Milch	das Bier gutes Bier
Dative	dem Wein gutem Wein	der Milch guter Milch	dem Bier gutem Bier

Plural (all genders)

Nominative	die Weine gute Weine
Accusative	die Weine gute Weine
Dative	den Weinen guten Weinen

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate form of the adjective shown in parentheses.

1. We are buying green plants for our apartment. (grün)

Wir kaufen _____ Pflanzen für unsere Wohnung.

2. Are there high mountains in Germany? (hoch)

Gibt es in Deutschland _____ Berge?

3. Hans likes to drink cold milk. (kalt)

Hans trinkt gern _____ Milch.

4. We often drive through old cities. (alt)

Wir fahren oft durch _____ Städte.

5. The suit is made of good cloth. (gut)

Der Anzug ist aus _____ Stoff.

6. On cold evenings we stay at home. (kalt)

An _____ Abenden bleiben wir zu Hause.

7. He likes to drive fast sports cars. (schnell)

Er fährt gern _____ Sportwagen.

8. Many Berliners live in dark apartments. (dunkel)

Viele Berliner wohnen in _____ Wohnungen.

9. In Frankfurt there are wide streets. (breit)

In Frankfurt gibt es _____ Strassen.

10. He likes to eat in expensive restaurants. (teuer)

Er isst gern in _____ Restaurants.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

NOTES

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. grüne
- _____ 2. hohe
- _____ 3. kalte
- _____ 4. alte
- _____ 5. gutem
- _____ 6. kalten
- _____ 7. schnelle
- _____ 8. dunklen
- _____ 9. breite
- _____ 10. teuren

START THE TAPE.

Say the German, filling in the blanks with the appropriate form of the adjective in parentheses.

1. Fresh air is healthy. (frisch)
.... Luft ist gesund.
2. Mr. and Mrs. Meyer have beautiful pictures in their house. (schön)
Herr und Frau Meyer haben Bilder in ihrem Haus.
3. They live in old houses. (alt)
Sie wohnen in Häusern.
4. In bad weather we stay home. (schlecht)
Bei Wetter bleiben wir zu Hause.
5. Hans likes to drink expensive wines. (teuer)
Hans trinkt gern Weine.
6. Cold coffee doesn't taste good to me. (kalt)
.... Kaffee schmeckt mir nicht.
7. He only drinks German beer. (deutsch)
Er trinkt nur Bier.
8. This restaurant has good food. (gut)
In diesem Restaurant gibt es Essen.
9. Do you like to drink light beer? (hell)
Trinken Sie gern Bier?
10. American cigarettes are strong. (amerikanisch)
.... Zigaretten sind stark.

It is possible for more than one unpreceded adjective to be used with a given noun, as in the following examples:

1. Starker, schwarzer Kaffee ist nicht gut.
(Strong black coffee is not good.)
2. Wir fahren durch schöne, alte Städte.
(We are driving through beautiful old cities.)
3. Er trägt einen Mantel aus gutem, warmem Stoff.
(He is wearing a coat made of good, warm material.)

When a noun is modified by more than one adjective, all adjectives (two or more) have, of course, the same ending. Thus, in the first example sentence above, both stark and schwarz have an -er ending because they both modify a masculine, singular noun in the nominative case. In the second sentence, schön and alt both have an -e ending because they modify a plural noun in the accusative case. Finally, in the third sentence, gut and warm have an -em ending because they modify a masculine, singular noun in the dative case.

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate form of each of the adjectives given in parentheses.

1. They live in dark, cold apartments.
(dunkel - kalt)

Sie wohnen in _____, _____ Wohnungen.
2. We like to swim in clean, warm water.
(sauber - warm)

Wir baden gern in _____, _____ Wasser.

3. Hans and Inge like to visit old German cities.
(alt - deutsch)

Hans und Inge besuchen gern _____ Städte.

4. The coat is made of good, warm material. (gut-warm)
Der Mantel ist aus _____, _____ Stoff.

5. They live in beautiful, elegant houses.
(schön - elegant)

Sie wohnen in _____, _____ Häusern.

6. He has big, heavy luggage with him.
(gross - schwer)

Er hat _____, _____ Gepäck bei sich.

7. This suit is made of good English cloth.
(gut - englisch)

Dieser Anzug ist aus _____, _____ Stoff.

8. They are buying themselves new, expensive coats.
(neu - teuer)

Sie kaufen sich _____, _____ Mäntel.

9. She likes to see new, interesting movies.
(neu - interessant)

Sie sieht sich gern _____, _____ Filme an.

10. In bad, cold weather, I prefer to stay home.
(schlecht - kalt)

Bei _____, _____ Wetter bleibe ich
lieber zu Hause.

11. Peter likes to drink dark, cold beer.
(dunkel - kalt)

Peter trinkt gern _____, _____ Bier.

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

_____ 1. dunklen, kalten

_____ 2. sauberem, warmem

_____ 3. alte, deutsche

_____ 4. gutem, warmem

_____ 5. schönen, eleganten

_____ 6. grosses, schweres

_____ 7. gutem, englischem

_____ 8. neue, teure

_____ 9. neue, interessante

_____ 10. schlechtem, kaltem

_____ 11. dunkles, kaltes

START THE TAPE.

Section 2

Appellations, Salutations, and Idiomatic Expressions

In Section 1, you learned the basic principle underlying the formation of descriptive adjectives when they are unpreceded by either a "der" word or "kein" word, namely, that the adjective takes the same ending as the definite article would in that grammatical context. This principle was practiced with a number of typical adjective-noun combinations, including sentences in which more than one unpreceded adjective modified a single noun.

The same system of adjective endings applies to a number of German idioms or fixed expressions. One such category is that of appellations ("dear John," "old friend," "dear parents," etc.). In general, appellations are used only in the nominative case, but you should be careful to make sure that the adjective agrees in gender and number with the noun. How would you express "dear Franz" in German, using the appropriate form of the adjective lieb?

You would say lieber Franz. Since Franz is a masculine singular proper noun, the unpreceded adjective ending would be the same as the ending of the definite article in the same grammatical context (in this instance, der).

How would you say "dear Inge"?

You would say liebe Inge. When referring to more than one person (as in "dear Father and Mother"), the German speaker is required to use a separate adjective for each person:

1. lieber Franz und lieber Peter
("dear Franz and Peter")
2. lieber Vater und liebe Mutter
("dear Father and Mother")
3. lieber Franz und liebe Ingrid
("dear Franz and Ingrid")

In sentences 2 and 3 above, you should also note that different adjective endings are used for each of the two persons, in keeping with their different genders.

NOTES

Common salutations such as "good morning," "good evening," "hello [good day]," "good night," use unpreceded adjectives in the accusative case form. This is because the German expression is in reality an abbreviated form of the longer salutation "I wish you a good morning (evening, etc.)" in which the noun in question serves as a direct object.

Listen to and repeat the following expressions:

guten Morgen	("good morning")
guten Abend	("good evening")
guten Tag	("hello" [good day])
gute Nacht	("good night")

Note the accusative singular feminine form of the adjective in gute Nacht.

In written German, appellations and salutations are usually accompanied by exclamation marks.

Lieber Hans!

Guten Abend!

Write the German.

1. Good evening, Peter.

2. Dear Father and Mother:

3. Good night, Ingrid.

4. Dear child:

5. Good night, Karl and Maria.

6. Hello, Fritz!

7. Dear friends [masc.]:

8. Good morning!

9. Dear Inge and Hans:

10. Dear, good friend [masc.]:

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

START THE TAPE.

A number of idiomatic expressions use unprecedented adjectives. Study the following list, noticing the form of the adjective and the English translation of the expression:

1. lange Zeit for a long time

Er war lange Zeit in Amerika.

(He was in America for a long time.)

2. in erster Linie in the first place
(literally, in first line)

In erster Linie will er Geld verdienen.

(In the first place, he wants to earn money)

3. aus gutem Grund for a good reason.
(literally, out of good ground)

Er bleibt aus gutem Grund zu Hause.

(He is staying home for a good reason.)

4. in grosser Eile in a big hurry

Ich kann nur einen Moment bleiben, denn ich bin in grosser Eile.

(I can only stay for a moment, because I am in a big hurry.)

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

1. Guten Abend, Peter!

2. Lieber Vater und liebe Mutter!

3. Gute Nacht, Ingrid!

4. Liebes Kind!

5. Gute Nacht, Karl und Maria!

6. Guten Tag, Fritz!

7. Liebe Freunde!

8. Guten Morgen!

9. Liebe Inge und lieber Hans!

10. Dear, good friend [masc.]:

You will note that the English equivalents of some of these expressions contain a definite or indefinite article which is not paralleled in the German expression:

in erster Linie in the first place

You can best remember to avoid using an article in the German expression (as well as the proper form of the adjective) by simply memorizing the expression. Study the four expressions on the preceding page until you feel you know them thoroughly, then turn the page for exercises.

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate German expression on the basis of the given English.

1. Mr. Meyer is always in a great hurry.

Herr Meyer ist immer _____.

2. He was in Munich for a long time.

Er war _____ in München.

3. Inge isn't inviting him for a good reason.

Inge lädt ihn _____ nicht ein.

4. In the first place, he must apologize.

_____ muss er sich entschuldigen.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences, supplying the appropriate idiomatic expression on the basis of the given English.

1. In the first place, you are supposed to learn German here.

Sie sollen hier Deutsch lernen.

2. Professor Müller goes home in a great hurry.

Professor Müller geht nach Hause.

3. He was in Florida for a long time.

Er war in Florida.

4. I am not going to call them for a good reason.

Ich rufe sie nicht an.

5. We don't smoke for a good reason.

.... rauchen wir nicht.

NOTES

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. in grosser Eile
- _____ 2. lange Zeit
- _____ 3. aus gutem Grund
- _____ 4. In erster Linie

Say complete German sentences on the basis of the given English.

1. Good morning, Mrs. Müller!
...., Frau Müller!
2. My brother is always in a great hurry.
Mein Bruder ist immer
3. He doesn't write her for a good reason.
.... schreibt er ihr nicht.
4. Dear Brother and Sister:
....!
5. Good evening, Peter!
...., Peter!
6. Dear Friends:
.... Freunde!

7. In the first place, I would like to thank you.
.... möchte ich dir danken.
8. Hello, Karl!
...., Karl!
9. I have been here for a long time.
Ich bin schon hier.
10. Dear Parents:
.... Eltern!
11. Dear old friend:
.... Freund!
12. Say good night, Dick!
Sag, Dick!

NOTES

Adjectives Expressing Quantity

Cardinal numbers (such as "seven," "twelve," "four hundred eighteen," etc.) are invariable in German, that is to say, they do not change their form, regardless of the gender, number, or case of the nouns which they precede. For example:

drei Männer	(three men)
drei Frauen	(three women)
mit drei Kindern	(with three children)

Adjectives which express a general, indefinite quantity (such as "many," "few," "several," etc.) do however, have different endings in German. When not preceded by a "der" or "kein" word, they follow the unpreceded adjective pattern.

Listen to and repeat the following German sentences, noticing the underlined adjectives expressing an indefinite quantity and the corresponding English expression:

1. Viele Amerikaner besuchen Deutschland.
(Many Americans visit Germany.)
2. Wenige Kinder spielen auf dieser Strasse.
(Few children play on this street.)
3. Einige Kinder spielen auf dieser Strasse.
(A few children play on this street.)

NOTE: The German words wenige and einige correspond to the English distinction between "few" and "a few". You can remember that einige is the term for "a few" by noting the element ein- in the German word.

Say the German word for "many."

Say the German word for "few."

Say the German word for "a few."

4. Mehrere Soldaten stehen vor dem Kino.
(Several soldiers are standing in front of the movie theater.)

NOTE: The word mehrere consists of three separate syllables, each of which should be enunciated clearly. Practice repeating this word after the model voice.

5. Andere Hotels sind nicht so teuer.
(Other hotels are not so expensive.)

Listen to and repeat the following German sentences, noticing the English translation.

1. Wenige Kinos zeigen diesen Film.
(Few movie theaters show this film.)
2. Viele Deutsche trinken gern Bier.
(Many Germans like to drink beer.)
3. Einige Schüler sprechen Deutsch.
(A few students speak German.)
4. Mehrere Freunde wollen uns besuchen.
(Several friends want to visit us.)
5. Andere Männer rauchen diese Zigarren auch.
(Other men also smoke these cigars.)

NOTES

Write the German.

1. other

2. many

3. few

4. several

5. a few

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

_____ 1. andere

_____ 2. viele

_____ 3. wenige

_____ 4. mehrere

_____ 5. einige

START THE TAPE.

As noted in the introduction to this section, viele, wenige, and other adjectives expressing an indefinite quantity function as unpreceded adjectives whenever they are in fact not preceded by a "der" or "kein" word. Accordingly, they take the appropriate definite article ending for the context in which they appear, as in the following examples:

Viele Amerikaner fahren nach Kalifornien.

(Many Americans go to California.)
(Nominative, plural, masculine.)

Der Professor hilft vielen Studenten.

(The professor helps many students.)
(Dative, plural, masculine.)

When other adjectives accompany an adjective of quantity in an unpreceded situation, as, for example, in Viele alte Freunde sind hier (Many old friends are here), the other adjectives also take the same ending, as you have already learned.

You may wish to review the "unpreceded adjective endings" in Section 1 of this module before beginning the next exercise.

Fill in the blanks on the basis of the given English.

1. We are visiting many countries.

Wir besuchen _____ Länder.

2. I am going to Germany with several buddies.

Ich fahre mit _____ Kameraden nach Deutschland.

3. Hans is helping a few good friends.

Hans hilft _____ Freunden.

4. Other restaurants are better than this one.

_____ Restaurants sind besser als dieses.

5. There are few students in this classroom.

In dieser Klasse sind _____ Schüler.

6. Hans writes letters to many friends.

Hans schreibt _____ Bekannten Briefe.

7. We are looking at a few old buildings.

Wir sehen uns _____ Gebäude an.

8. Helga and Thomas, other children are not as bad as you.

Helga und Thomas, _____ Kinder sind nicht so böse wie ihr.

9. Several houses have no garage.

_____ Häuser haben keine Garage.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

_____ 1. viele

_____ 2. mehreren

_____ 3. einigen guten

_____ 4. Andere

_____ 5. wenige

_____ 6. vielen

_____ 7. einige alte

_____ 8. andere

_____ 9. Mehrere

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences on the basis of the given English.

1. In a few days he is flying to Germany.

.... Tagen fliegt er nach Deutschland.

2. Do you have any other interesting magazines?

Haben Sie noch Zeitschriften?

3. Several soldiers want to spend their vacation in Germany.

.... Soldaten wollen ihren Urlaub in Deutschland verbringen.

4. We are getting letters from many good friends.

Wir bekommen von Freunden Briefe.

5. Few men help their wives in the kitchen.

.... Männer helfen ihren Frauen in der Küche.

6. Hans is buying a few bottles of wine.

Hans kauft Flaschen Wein.

7. In other cities there are also elegant hotels.

In Städten gibt es auch elegante Hotels.

Present Perfect Tense I

In this and the following **lesson**, you will learn how to form and use the present perfect tense of German verbs. The present perfect tense is the most frequently used past tense form in German, and is conceptually easy for American students since it is formed in the same manner as the English present perfect tense. The major task in learning the German present perfect tense is to learn how to form the past participle of the verbs. Many German verbs have a regular past participle, but a number of important and frequently used verbs have an irregular past participle which must simply be memorized. In the following **lesson** you will learn:

1. the general pattern of formation of the German present perfect tense, its meaning, and its relationship to English past tenses;
2. the formation of the past participle of regular (so-called "weak") verbs;
3. the irregular formation of the past participle of the so-called "strong" and "mixed" verbs.

1. Formation of the Present Perfect Tense

As a native speaker of English, you are already quite familiar with the present perfect tense in English. This is the tense used in sentences such as the following:

I have answered his letter.

He has bought a new car.

We have learned our lesson.

In each of the above sentences, the present perfect tense is made up of two verb forms. Say the two verb forms in the first sentence.

You will note that the first verb form in each of the above sentences is a present tense form of the verb "to have." This is called the auxiliary verb. The second verb form in each case is the so-called perfect form of the main action verb. A more common name for this form is the past participle. In each of the sentences below, write AUX above the auxiliary verb and PAST PART above the past participle.

1. We have looked for the football.
2. Many of his friends have lived in Berlin.
3. She has certainly gotten the telegram by now.
4. They have not yet arrived at the border.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

AUX PAST PART

1. We have looked for the football.
2. Many of his friends have lived in Berlin.
3. She has certainly gotten the telegram by now.
4. They have not yet arrived at the border.

START THE TAPE.

On the basis of the English pattern, you should be able to identify the present perfect tense form of German sentences. For each of the sentences below, write AUX above the auxiliary verb form and PAST PART above the past participle.

1. Er hat das schon gemacht.
(He has already done that.)
2. Wir haben ihn lange Zeit gesucht.
(We looked for him a long time.)
3. Er hat das Buch gekauft.
(He bought the book.)
4. Hast du das Auto geparkt?
(Did you park the car?)

START THE TAPE.

Before checking your answers on the next page, you should notice that the single German present perfect tense pattern covers three different English past tense constructions:

He has already done that.

We looked for him a long time.

Did you park the car?

The third English construction - "did (park, run, buy, etc.)" - is used most frequently in questions:

Did he go to the movies?

Did you see my friend yesterday?

although it can also be used in declarative sentences to convey emphasis:

He did [indeed] buy that car.

The point to remember is that a single German construction—auxiliary verb plus past participle—encompasses the three English possibilities.

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

AUX PAST PART
1. Er hat das schon gemacht.

AUX PAST PART
2. Wir haben ihn lange Zeit gesucht.

AUX PAST PART
3. Er hat das Buch gekauft.

AUX PAST PART
4. Hast du das Auto geparkt?

START THE TAPE.

Note that the auxiliary verb in each German sentence is a form of the verb "to have" (haben), and is in the present tense. A limited number of German verbs use "to be" (sein) as the auxiliary verb, as will be discussed in **Lesson 22**. The majority of German verbs, however, use haben, and all the exercises in this **Lesson** will be based on verbs of this type.

When a simple German statement is in the present perfect tense, the past participle goes to the end of the statement:

Der Schüler hat gestern abend zu Hause den Dialog gelernt.

Section 2

Present Perfect Tense of Regular ("Weak") Verbs

Many verbs in English have a completely regular past participle, as illustrated by the following:

<u>Infinitive</u>	<u>Past Participle</u>
1. to believe	believed
2. to live	lived
3. to learn	learned
4. to park	parked
5. to look	looked

In numbers 1 and 2 above, what is added to the infinitive form of the verb to obtain the past participle?

What is added to the infinitive form in numbers 3, 4, and 5 to make the past participle?

From these two simple rules, the past participles of all the many "regular" English verbs can be formed.

By the same token, a simple although different rule accounts for the past participle form of regular German verbs. This rule is that a ge- must be added in front of infinitive stem and -t must be added at the end of the stem. The infinitive stem, as you will remember, is found by dropping the -en from the infinitive form of the verb.

Write the infinitive stem for each of the following:

1. glauben

2. wohnen

3. sagen

4. lernen

5. machen

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

_____ 1. glaub

_____ 2. wohn

_____ 3. sag

_____ 4. lern

_____ 5. mach

Now that you have the infinitive stem for each of these verbs, go back to the preceding page and turn each stem into the past participle by adding the appropriate suffix and prefix. Check your work against the answers on the next page.

START THE TAPE.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

NOTES

- _____ 1. geglaubt
_____ 2. gewohnt
_____ 3. gesagt
_____ 4. gelernt
_____ 5. gemacht

Given the fact that all of the following verbs form their past participles regularly, listen to the infinitive and then say the past participle form.

- | | |
|-------------|---------------|
| 1. glauben | 10. wohnen |
| 2. holen | 11. grüssen |
| 3. machen | 12. hören |
| 4. spielen | 13. legen |
| 5. suchen | 14. stellen |
| 6. brauchen | 15. danken |
| 7. lernen | 16. lieben |
| 8. parken | 17. rauchen |
| 9. sagen | 18. schmecken |
| | 19. zeigen |

Say the entire German sentence, supplying the past participle of the verb in parentheses.

NOTES

1. (stellen) Sie haben die Lampe auf den Tisch
2. (hören) Ich habe den Kellner in der Küche
3. (sagen) Der Lehrer hat es mir im Klassenzimmer
4. (hängen) Die Mutter hat das Bild an die Wand
5. (suchen) Wir haben den Fussball in der Garage
6. (leben) Die Schüler aus Amerika haben drei
Jahre in Deutschland
7. (zeigen) Ich habe dem Fremden die Stadt
8. (rauchen) Er hat eine billige Zigarre

In this exercise you are asked to fill in both the past participle and the proper form of the auxiliary verb haben in order to form a complete present perfect tense. Note that the form of the auxiliary is determined by the subject of the sentence. For example:

Ich habe das Auto gekauft.

Du hast das Auto gekauft.

Wir haben das Auto gekauft.

1. (legen) Die Mutter _____ die Zeitung auf das Sofa _____.
2. (wohnen) Meine Eltern _____ zwei Wochen im Hotel _____.
3. (grüssen) _____ du die neuen Nachbarn _____?
4. (spielen) Der Vater _____ mit seinem Kind im Garten _____.
5. (suchen) _____ ihr das Mädchen am Strand _____?
6. (holen) Sie [pl.] _____ das Essen aus der Wirtschaft _____.
7. (spielen) Wir _____ gestern Abend Karten _____.

8. (schmecken) Wie _____ dir der Kuchen _____?
9. (rauchen) Wir _____ im Klassenzimmer _____.
10. (lernen) _____ ihr die neuen Wörter _____?
11. (hören) Die Mutter _____ das Kind nicht _____.
12. (tanzen) Ich _____ den ganzen Abend _____.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. hat gelegt
- _____ 2. haben gewohnt
- _____ 3. Hast gegrüsst
- _____ 4. hat gespielt
- _____ 5. Habt gesucht?
- _____ 6. haben geholt
- _____ 7. haben gespielt
- _____ 8. hat geschmeckt

- _____ 9. haben geraucht
- _____ 10. Habt gelernt
- _____ 11. hat gehört
- _____ 12. habe getanzt

Change the following present tense sentences to the present perfect tense by filling in the appropriate verb forms.

1. Der Soldat grüsst den Offizier.

Der Soldat _____ den Offizier
_____.

2. Das Kind sagt "Guten Morgen."

Das Kind _____ "Guten Morgen"
_____.

3. Sie [pl.] holen dem Lehrer die Bleistifte.

Sie _____ dem Lehrer die Bleistifte
_____.

4. Die Schüler aus Amerika leben drei Jahre in Deutschland.

Die Schüler aus Amerika _____ drei
Jahre in Deutschland _____.

5. Ich zeige meinem Freund das Bild.

Ich _____ meinem Freund das Bild
_____.

6. Er kauft seiner Tochter einen neuen Sportwagen.
Er _____ seiner Tochter einen neuen

Sportwagen _____.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

START THE TAPE.

As you recall from Lesson 11, certain verb stems would give rise to pronunciation problems if -t were simply added to them. Examples of this type for past participle formation are the verbs arbeiten, reden, öffnen, antworten, melden and baden. Here again, the helping vowel -e- is used and -et is added to the verb stem.

Listen to the present tense sentence, and then say the sentence in the present perfect tense.

1. Die Frau redet immer von ihrer Tochter.

Die Frau immer von ihrer Tochter

2. Die Schüler antworten dem Lehrer.

Die Schüler dem Lehrer

3. Ich parke meinen Sportwagen vor dem Hotel.

Ich meinen Sportwagen vor dem Hotel

4. Die Pflanzen brauchen jeden Tag Wasser.

Die Pflanzen jeden Tag Wasser

5. Inge dankt dem Vater für das Geschenk.

Inge dem Vater für das Geschenk

6. Unsere Kinder spielen immer im Garten.

Unsere Kinder immer im Garten

7. Meldet ihr es im Büro?

.... ihr es im Büro?

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

_____ 1. hat gegrüsst

_____ 2. hat gesagt

_____ 3. haben geholt

_____ 4. haben gelebt

_____ 5. habe gezeigt

_____ 6. hat gekauft

8. Hans legt die Zeitungen auf den Tisch.
Hans die Zeitungen auf den Tisch

9. Suchen Sie Ihr Buch?
.... Sie Ihr Buch?

10. Ich arbeite zuviel.
Ich zuviel

11. Sie baden jeden Tag.
Sie jeden Tag

12. Dankt ihr Peter für das schöne Geschenk?
.... ihr Peter für das schöne Geschenk?

13. Wir schenken unserem Kind ein Fahrrad.
Wir unserem Kind ein Fahrrad

14. Öffnest du der Dame die Tür?
.... du der Dame die Tür?

Present Perfect Tense of
Irregular ("Strong" and "Mixed") Verbs

The present perfect tense of irregular German verbs is formed according to the same "auxiliary and past participle" pattern as German regular verbs. However, since the past participles of the irregular verbs vary so greatly, they must simply be memorized along with the infinitive form of the verb. In this section, we will concentrate on several irregular verbs which represent most of the sound/spelling changes typical of irregular verbs. This will help you to become familiar with typical patterns but will not take the place of careful memorization of the past participle of each irregular verb as you encounter it in your language study.

Listen to and repeat the following infinitive and past participle forms, then stop your tape recorder and study them further until you are able to say and write the past participle for each of the infinitives listed.

<u>Infinitive</u>	<u>Past Participle</u>
lesen	gelesen
schreiben	geschrieben
denken	gedacht
treffen	getroffen
nehmen	genommen
sprechen	gesprochen
kennen	gekant
sitzen	gesessen

START THE TAPE.

Listen to the infinitive, then say the corresponding past participle.

NOTES

1. kennen

2. lesen

3. sitzen

4. schreiben

5. sprechen

6. treffen

7. denken

8. nehmen

Write the past participle for each of the infinitives shown.

1. sprechen
2. nehmen
3. kennen
4. treffen
5. denken
6. lesen
7. sitzen
8. schreiben

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

Listen to and repeat the following infinitive and past participle forms, then stop your tape recorder for further study as required.

<u>Infinitive</u>	<u>Past Participle</u>
1. geben	gegeben
2. liegen	gelegen
3. sehen	gesehen
4. wissen	gewusst
5. stehen	gestanden
6. trinken	getrunken
7. waschen	gewaschen
8. bringen	gebracht

START THE TAPE.

Listen to the infinitive, then say the corresponding past participle.

1. geben
2. trinken
3. bringen
4. stehen
5. waschen
6. liegen
7. wissen
8. sehen

Write the past participle for each of the infinitives shown.

1. liegen
2. geben
3. wissen
4. sehen
5. trinken
6. bringen
7. waschen
8. stehen

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. gesprochen
- _____ 2. genommen
- _____ 3. gekannt
- _____ 4. getroffen
- _____ 5. gedacht
- _____ 6. gelesen
- _____ 7. gesessen
- _____ 8. geschrieben

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. gelegen
- _____ 2. gegeben
- _____ 3. gewusst
- _____ 4. gesehen
- _____ 5. getrunken
- _____ 6. gebracht
- _____ 7. gewaschen
- _____ 8. gestanden

Write the past participle for each of the infinitives shown.

1. treffen
2. stehen
3. wissen
4. geben
5. sitzen
6. waschen
7. denken
8. trinken
9. liegen
10. schreiben
11. bringen
12. sehen
13. nehmen
14. kennen
15. lesen
16. sprechen

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences, supplying the past participle of the verb in parentheses.

1. Sie haben das Buch auf dem Tisch (sehen)
2. Der Offizier hat es schon (wissen)
3. Der Fussball hat auf dem Spielplatz (liegen)
4. Die Soldaten haben viel Bier (trinken)
5. Habt ihr den Kindern Kuchen? (geben)
6. Peter hat mir ein Buch (bringen)
7. Hast du deinen Lehrer vor der Schule? (treffen)
8. Die Lampe hat auf dem Tisch (stehen)
9. Ich habe ihn (kennen)
10. Wir haben das Beispiel im Lehrbuch (lesen)
11. Meine Eltern haben mit unserem Nachbarn über die Wohnung (sprechen)
12. Er hat das Geld nicht (nehmen)
13. Habt ihr der Mutter einen Brief? (schreiben)
14. Er hat auf diesem Sofa (sitzen)

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

NOTES

- _____ 1. getroffen
- _____ 2. gestanden
- _____ 3. gewusst
- _____ 4. gegeben
- _____ 5. gesessen
- _____ 6. gewaschen
- _____ 7. gedacht
- _____ 8. getrunken
- _____ 9. gelegen
- _____ 10. geschrieben
- _____ 11. gebracht
- _____ 12. gesehen
- _____ 13. genommen
- _____ 14. gekannt
- _____ 15. gelesen
- _____ 16. gesprochen

Write the German, filling in both the past participle and the proper form of haben to form a complete present perfect tense.

NOTES

1. (sprechen) _____ ihr mit dem Arzt
_____?
2. (geben) Die Frau _____ diesem Herrn keinen
Kuchen _____.
3. (schreiben) Der Soldat _____ dem Mädchen
einen Brief _____.
4. (waschen) _____ du dein Auto
_____?
5. (treffen) Wir _____ die Familie im Restaurant
_____.
6. (bringen) Den Tisch und die Stühle _____ ich
ins Haus _____.
7. (sehen) Die Adresse _____ wir in der
Zeitung _____.
8. (liegen) Ihr _____ zu lange in der Sonne
_____.
9. (bringen) Die Mutter _____ dem kranken Kind
das Essen _____.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. Habt gesprochen
- _____ 2. hat gegeben
- _____ 3. hat geschrieben
- _____ 4. Hast gewaschen
- _____ 5. haben getroffen
- _____ 6. habe gebracht
- _____ 7. haben gesehen
- _____ 8. habt gelegen
- _____ 9. hat gebracht

START THE TAPE.

Listen to the present tense sentence, then say the sentence in the present perfect tense.

1. Sie gibt den Kindern Kuchen.
Sie den Kindern Kuchen
2. Meine Kinder trinken viel Milch.
Meine Kinder viel Milch
3. Er liest die Wörter in seinem Lehrbuch.
Er die Wörter in seinem Lehrbuch
4. Wir treffen unsere Freunde im Restaurant.
Wir unsere Freunde im Restaurant
5. Sie sprechen Englisch.
Sie Englisch
6. Die Blumen stehen am Fenster.
Die Blumen am Fenster
7. Ich schreibe den Satz ins Buch.
Ich den Satz ins Buch
8. Ihr seht das nicht.
Ihr das nicht
9. Die Lehrerin kennt unsere Freunde.
Die Lehrerin unsere Freunde
10. Sie [pl.] wissen es auch.
Sie es auch

The two following exercises combine verbs with regular and irregular past participles. Fill in the blanks on the basis of the given English.

1. Karl didn't believe him. (glauben)
Karl _____ ihm nicht _____.
2. He lay on the beach all day. (liegen)
Er _____ den ganzen Tag am Strand.
_____.
3. Did you dance on Sunday? (tanzen)
_____ ihr am Sonntag _____?
4. We never thanked him for the beautiful present. (danken)
Wir _____ ihm nie für das schöne Geschenk
_____.
5. Did you talk to the teacher about your vacation? (sprechen)
_____ du mit dem Lehrer über deinen Urlaub
_____?
6. Did you hear the child? (hören)
_____ du das Kind _____?
7. He bought her flowers every weekend. (kaufen)
Er _____ ihr jedes Wochenende Blumen _____.

8. Why didn't you greet Professor Meyer? (grüssen)

Warum _____ du Professor Meyer nicht
_____?

9. Inge didn't write Hans for a long time. (schreiben)

Inge _____ Hans lange Zeit nicht
_____.

10. Did you need the book in class? (brauchen)

_____ du das Buch im Unterricht _____?

11. We saw him yesterday after church. (sehen)

Wir _____ ihn gestern nach der Kirche
_____.

12. I knew him well. (kennen)

Ich _____ ihn gut _____.

13. The students have learned a lot. (lernen)

Die Schüler _____ viel _____.

14. Have you read his new book? (lesen)

_____ Sie sein neues Buch
_____?

15. He didn't know the word. (wissen)

Er _____ das Wort nicht _____.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

_____ 1. hat geglaubt

_____ 2. hat gelegen

_____ 3. Habt getanzt

_____ 4. haben gedankt

_____ 5. Hast gesprochen

_____ 6. Hast gehört

_____ 7. hat gekauft

_____ 8. hast gegrüsst

_____ 9. hat geschrieben

_____ 10. Hast gebraucht

_____ 11. haben gesehen

_____ 12. habe gekannt

_____ 13. haben gelernt

_____ 14. Haben gelesen

_____ 15. hat gewusst

START THE TAPE.

- Say complete German sentences on the basis of the given English.
1. We often thought of you. (denken)
Wir oft an dich
 2. Did you already get the beer? (holen)
.... du das Bier schon?
 3. Hans and Inge have lived several years in America. (leben)
Hans und Inge mehrere Jahre in Amerika
 4. We stood a long time in front of the hotel. (stehen)
Wir lange Zeit vor dem Hotel
 5. Have you already given her the present? (geben)
.... du ihr das Geschenk schon?
 6. Mr. and Mrs. Meyer always made long trips. (machen)
Herr und Frau Meyer immer lange Reisen
 7. Why didn't they answer us? (antworten)
Warum sie uns nicht?
 8. We didn't drink much coffee last night. (trinken)
Wir gestern abend nicht viel Kaffee
 9. The children played all afternoon in the garden. (spielen)
Die Kinder den ganzen Nachmittag im Garten
 10. Did Hans wash his sports car? (waschen)
.... Hans seinen Sportwagen?
 11. Who took the book out of my room? (nehmen)
Wer das Buch aus meinem Zimmer?
 12. Where did you park your car? (parken)
Wo Sie Ihr Auto?
 13. They showed their friends the town. (zeigen)
Sie ihren Freunden die Stadt
 14. Did he always smoke that many cigarettes? (rauchen)
.... er immer so viele Zigaretten?
 15. We often met Professor Schulz at this restaurant. (treffen)
Wir Professor Schulz oft in diesem Restaurant

LESSON 22

Present Perfect Tense II

In the preceding **lesson**, you learned to form and use the present perfect tense of simple regular (so-called "weak") verbs and simple irregular ("strong" and "mixed") verbs. This **lesson** continues discussion and practice of the present perfect tense in the following sections:

1. Present Perfect Tense with Separable Prefix Verbs
2. Verbs with Inseparable Prefixes
3. Verbs of Foreign Origin Ending in -ieren
4. Present Perfect Tense of Reflexive Verbs
5. Present Perfect Tense of Verbs using the Auxiliary Sein

1. Present Perfect Tense with Separable Prefix Verbs

In **Lesson 21**, you learned to form the past participle of regular ("weak") verbs by adding the ending -t to the stem of the verb and placing ge- at the front of the verb. Following this principle, what is the past participle of the weak verb legen?

The past participle of legen is gelegt. The past participles of typical irregular ("strong" and "mixed") verbs were memorized (for example: sitzen - gesessen; kennen - gekant). In all cases, however, the prefix ge- was added to the front of the verb.

The past participles of separable prefix verbs are formed in almost the same manner; that is, they insert -ge- between the prefix and the past participle of the simple verb, thus forming a compound.

Let us consider the separable prefix verb abholen. Is the simple verb holen, from which the separable prefix verb abholen is derived, a regular (weak) or irregular (strong or mixed) verb?

Holen is a regular verb, which forms its past participle by adding -t to the stem of the verb and prefixing ge-:

geholt

Remembering the proper placement of the ge- in separable prefix verbs, what is the past participle of abholen?

The past participle of abholen is abgeholt.

If geben is an irregular verb whose past participle is gegeben, what is the past participle of hergeben?

The past participle of hergeben is hergegeben.
Note again the position of the ge- in front of the
simple verb. Write the past participle for each of
the separable prefix verbs below, both regular and
irregular:

1. aufmachen
(open, open up) _____
2. mitnehmen
(take along) _____
3. einladen
(invite) _____
4. mitbringen
(bring along) _____
5. abholen
(pick up) _____
6. annehmen
(accept) _____
7. einschenken
(pour something to drink) _____
8. aufschreiben
(write down) _____
9. hergeben
(hand over) _____

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

NOTES

- _____ 1. aufgemacht
- _____ 2. mitgenommen
- _____ 3. eingeladen
- _____ 4. mitgebracht
- _____ 5. abgeholt
- _____ 6. angenommen
- _____ 7. eingeschenkt
- _____ 8. aufgeschrieben
- _____ 9. hergegeben

Fill in the blanks on the basis of the given English, using the present perfect tense form of the word shown in parentheses.

1. Ingrid opened her present immediately. (aufmachen)

Ingrid _____ ihr Geschenk gleich
_____.

2. Have you already picked up your friend? (abholen)

_____ du schon deinen Freund
_____?

3. We handed over all our books. (hergeben)

Wir _____ alle unsere Bücher
_____.

4. Did Hans take along his suitcases? (mitnehmen)

_____ Hans seine Koffer _____?

5. We accepted his invitation with pleasure. (annehmen)

Wir _____ seine Einladung gern _____.

6. I poured myself a glass of wine. (einschenken)

Ich _____ mir ein Glas Wein _____.

7. Mr. Müller always wrote everything down. (aufschreiben)

Herr Müller _____ immer alles
_____.

8. Inge, why didn't you take the child along? (mitnehmen)

Inge, warum _____ du das Kind nicht
_____?

9. Mrs. Meyer brought along some apples. (mitbringen)

Frau Meyer _____ einige Äpfel
_____.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. hat aufgemacht
- _____ 2. Hast abgeholt
- _____ 3. haben hergegeben
- _____ 4. Hat mitgenommen
- _____ 5. haben angenommen
- _____ 6. habe eingeschickt
- _____ 7. hat aufgeschrieben
- _____ 8. hast mitgenommen
- _____ 9. hat mitgebracht

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences, using the present perfect tense form of the verb shown in parentheses.

1. Why didn't you invite him for dinner? (einladen)
Warum du ihn nicht zum Essen?
2. Did you bring along the new magazines? (mitbringen)
.... ihr die neuen Illustrierten?
3. We picked up Dr. Schulz at the office. (abholen)
Wir Dr. Schulz vom Büro
4. Hans handed over his money. (hergeben)
Hans sein Geld
5. Why didn't you accept the invitation? (annehmen)
Warum du die Einladung nicht?
6. He wrote down the address. (aufschreiben)
Er die Adresse
7. Did you open the door for him? (aufmachen)
.... du ihm die Tür?
8. Peter poured Ingrid a glass of wine. (einschenken)
Peter Ingrid ein Glas Wein
9. They took their friends along to the beach. (mitnehmen)
Sie ihre Freunde an den Strand

Section 2

Verbs with Inseparable Prefixes

As you may recall from **Lesson 7**, a number of German verbs have inseparable prefixes which are an integral part of the verb and are never separated from it. It was pointed out in that **lesson** that a separable prefix is always stressed in the verb infinitive form, whereas a non-separable prefix is unstressed.

Some common inseparable prefix verbs are:

verkaufen	(to sell)
besuchen	(to visit)
gehören	(to belong to)
verstehen	(to understand)
bestellen	(to order)
gefallen	(to like [to please, be pleasing to])

Inseparable prefixes, unlike separable prefixes, do not have a meaning of their own and are not found as separate words in the dictionary, although they modify (and in some cases, radically change) the meaning of the verbs to which they are affixed:

kaufen - "to buy"; verkaufen - "to sell."

The past participles of inseparable prefix verbs are noteworthy in that they do NOT add ge- to the front of the verb. Except for this difference, inseparable prefix verbs form their past participle in the same way as the parent verb.

For example:

<u>Separable Prefix Verb</u>	<u>Parent Verb</u>
besuchen	suchen

What is the past participle of the (regular) verb suchen?

The past participle of suchen is gesucht.

What is the past participle of the inseparable prefix verb besuchen? (Remember the caution about ge-!)

The past participle of besuchen is besucht. (The ending of the past participles is the same as that for suchen, but no ge- prefix is added.)

The past participle of inseparable prefix verbs whose parent verb is irregular has the same ending as the parent verb (and any vowel changes shown by the parent verb) but again does not add the prefix ge-. For example:

Inseparable prefix verb:	bestellen
Parent verb:	stellen
Past participle of parent verb:	gestellt
Past participle of inseparable prefix verb:	bestellt

Study the above paragraphs until you feel you know thoroughly the past participle formation rule for inseparable prefix verbs, then turn the page for spoken and written exercises.

Say complete German sentences, supplying the present perfect form of the verb shown in parentheses.

1. I liked their new apartment very much. (gefallen)

Ihre neue Wohnung mir sehr

2. Did you understand them? (verstehen)

.... du sie?

3. We haven't visited our parents for a long time. (besuchen)

Wir unsere Eltern lange nicht

4. Did you order a bottle of wine? (bestellen)

.... ihr eine Flasche Wein?

5. Has Karl already sold his sports car? (verkaufen)

.... Karl seinen Sportwagen schon?

6. This beautiful garden belonged to my parents for many years. (gehören)

Dieser schöne Garten viele Jahre meinen Eltern

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate form of the present perfect tense, using the verb shown in parentheses.

1. Mr. Meyer has sold his old house yesterday.
(verkaufen)

Herr Meyer _____ gestern sein altes Haus

_____.

2. I did not understand the teacher this morning.
(verstehen)

Ich _____ den Lehrer heute morgen

nicht _____.

3. Did you like the new movie? (gefallen)

_____ dir der neue Film _____?

4. They ordered another bottle of wine. (bestellen)

Sie _____ noch eine Flasche Wein

_____.

5. We visited Peter in Cologne. (besuchen)

Wir _____ Peter in Köln _____.

6. This old car belonged to my father. (gehören)

Dieses alte Auto _____ meinem Vater

_____.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

NOTES

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

NOTES

_____ 1. hat verkauft

_____ 2. habe verstanden

_____ 3. hat gefallen

_____ 4. haben bestellt

_____ 5. haben besucht

_____ 6. hat gehört

START THE TAPE.

Section 3

Verbs of Foreign Origin Ending in "-ieren"

A number of German verbs which end in -ieren have been borrowed from other languages (mainly French). The meanings of these verbs are easy to remember, since they are in large part cognates of French words, or by extension, English words. Listen to and repeat the following words, noticing the English translation.

1. studieren (to study at a university)
2. diktieren (to dictate)
3. reparieren (to repair)
4. gratulieren (to congratulate)
5. rasieren (to shave)

Verbs of foreign origin ending in -ieren form their past participles regularly (that is, add the ending -t to the verb stem) except that they do not add the prefix ge-. In this respect, they are similar to verbs with inseparable prefixes. On the basis of the preceding discussion, write the past participle of each of the "-ieren" verbs below:

1. studieren

2. diktieren

3. reparieren

4. gratulieren

5. rasieren

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

NOTES

- _____ 1. studiert
- _____ 2. diktiert
- _____ 3. repariert
- _____ 4. gratuliert
- _____ 5. rasiert

START THE TAPE.

Listen to the infinitive form of the verbs below,
then say the corresponding past participle.

- 1. studieren
- 2. diktieren
- 3. reparieren
- 4. gratulieren
- 5. rasieren

Fill in the blanks with the present perfect tense of the verbs shown in parentheses.

NOTES

1. Mr. Meyer shaved his sick neighbor. (rasieren)

Herr Meyer _____ seinen kranken Nachbarn

_____.

2. Did you congratulate him on his birthday?
(gratulieren)

_____ du ihm zum Geburtstag _____?

3. He quickly repaired his sports car. (reparieren)

Er _____ schnell seinen Sportwagen

_____.

4. Yesterday I dictated many letters to my secretary.
(diktieren)

Ich _____ meiner Sekretärin gestern viele

Briefe _____.

5. He studied in Germany for three years. (studieren)

Er _____ drei Jahre in Deutschland

_____.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

NOTES

_____ 1. hat rasiert

_____ 2. Hast gratuliert

_____ 3. hat
repariert

_____ 4. habe
diktiert

_____ 5. hat studiert

Present Perfect Tense of Reflexive Verbs

In **Lessons 13** and **14**, you learned the formation and use of reflexive constructions in present tense sentences. Of course, reflexive constructions can also be used in the present perfect tense, such as:

Er hat sich gestern abend amüsiert.

(He had a good time last night.)

Word order for reflexive sentences in the present perfect tense is similar to that for non-reflexive sentences, with the single exception that the proper reflexive pronoun immediately follows the auxiliary verb. The past participle is placed at the end of the sentence, as in any present perfect construction.

Er	hat	sich	gestern abend	amüsiert.
	↑	↑		↑
	auxiliary	reflexive		past
	verb	pronoun		participle

In interrogative sentences, the subject of the sentence and the auxiliary verb are inverted, but all other sentence elements remain the same:

Hat er sich gestern abend amüsiert?

The past participle of a reflexive verb is identical to the past participle of the corresponding simple (non-reflexive) verb, and can thus be either regular or irregular. Listen to and repeat the following sentences, noticing the word order and the form of the past participle.

1. (sich kaufen) Herr Meyer hat sich ein neues Auto gekauft.
(Mr. Meyer has bought himself a new car.)
2. (sich rasieren) Hast du dich heute morgen rasiert?
(Did you shave this morning?)
3. (sich machen) Ich habe mir einen Mantel gemacht.
(I made myself a coat.)
4. (sich waschen) Wir haben uns mit kaltem Wasser gewaschen.
(We washed with cold water.)
5. (sich anziehen) Die Kinder haben sich heute morgen warme Mäntel angezogen.
(The children put on warm coats this morning.)
6. (sich amüsieren) Die Soldaten haben sich in der Wirtschaft amüsiert.
(The soldiers had fun in the tavern.)
7. (sich interessieren für) Die Schüler haben sich sehr für das neue Lehrbuch interessiert.
(The students were very interested in the new textbook.)

Study the above sentences until you feel you are ready for exercises in which you must produce present perfect tense sentences using these reflexive verbs.

Fill in the blanks with the present perfect tense of the verbs shown in parentheses.

1. Did you watch a movie last night? (sich ansehen)

_____ du dir **gestern** abend einen Film

_____?

2. I shaved quickly this morning. (sich rasieren)

Ich _____ mich heute morgen schnell

_____.

3. The officer was very interested in the new Porsche. (sich interessieren für)

Der Offizier _____ sich sehr für den neuen

Porsche _____.

4. Hans and Inge had fun at the beach. (sich amüsieren)

Hans und Inge _____ sich am Strand

_____.

5. The soldiers washed themselves in the river. (sich waschen)

Die Soldaten _____ sich im Fluss

_____.

6. I didn't order black coffee [for myself]. (sich bestellen)

Ich _____ mir keinen schwarzen Kaffee

_____.

7. Did you buy yourselves new bicycles? (sich kaufen)

_____ ihr euch neue Fahrräder

_____?

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

NOTES

NOTES

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

_____ 1. Hast angesehen

_____ 2. habe rasiert

_____ 3. hat interessiert

_____ 4. haben amüsiert

_____ 5. haben gewaschen

_____ 6. habe bestellt

_____ 7. Habt gekauft

START THE TAPE.

NOTES

Say complete German sentences, supplying the appropriate present perfect form of the verb shown in parentheses.

1. I bought myself an interesting book.
(sich kaufen)
Ich mir ein interessantes Buch
2. The soldiers shaved this morning. (sich rasieren)
Die Soldaten sich heute morgen
3. We had great fun in Munich. (sich amüsieren)
Wir uns gut in München
4. Brigitte washed her hair last night.
(sich waschen)
Brigitte sich gestern abend das Haar
5. The students were very interested in the German magazine. (sich interessieren für)
Die Schüler sich sehr für die deutsche Zeitschrift
6. Did you watch that interesting movie?
(sich ansehen)
.... ihr euch diesen interessanten Film?
7. They made themselves something to eat.
(sich machen)
Sie sich etwas zu essen

Say complete German sentences, supplying both the appropriate present perfect verb form and the proper reflexive pronoun on the basis of the given English.

1. Hans made himself breakfast this morning.
(sich machen)
Hans heute morgen das Frühstück
2. We had a lot of fun at the party.
(sich amüsieren)
Wir gut auf der Party
3. Did the children put on their coats this morning?
(sich anziehen)
.... die Kinder heute morgen die Mäntel?
4. I was once very much interested in fast sports cars. (sich interessieren für)
Ich mal sehr für schnelle Sportwagen
5. Did you wash your hair last night? (sich waschen)
.... du gestern abend das Haar?
6. Peter didn't shave for three whole weeks.
(sich rasieren)
Peter drei Wochen lang nicht

Section 5

Present Perfect Tense of Verbs using the Auxiliary "Sein"

Most German verbs use haben as the auxiliary verb to form the present perfect tense. There are, however, a number of verbs, including some very common ones, which use the auxiliary sein.

An example is the verb:

gehen (to go) past participle: gegangen

Frau Meyer ist ins Kino gegangen.

How would you express the above German sentence in English?

You would say: Mrs. Meyer went to the movies.

or: Mrs. Meyer has gone to the movies.

or possibly: Mrs. Meyer did go to the movies.

You would NOT say: (*) "Mrs. Meyer is gone to the movies,"

even though the German auxiliary verb might tempt you to think of "is" as the corresponding English expression.

(Earlier forms of English did have a number of verbs which used "to be" as an auxiliary, as in "He is risen," but modern English uses the auxiliary "to have" in all instances.)

Learning to use present perfect tense constructions with sein involves three steps:

1. remembering the verbs which use sein as an auxiliary
2. learning the past participles of these verbs
3. remembering to use the proper form of sein (rather than haben) when forming present perfect sentences.

It is best in the long run simply to memorize the "verbs which take sein" to the point that you are able to use them automatically. However, it may help you to know that most verbs which use sein have two basic characteristics. First, they denote either motion, for example:

fahren (to drive, go)

Er ist nach Köln gefahren.

(He drove to Cologne.),

or a change of condition of the subject, for example:

werden (to become)

Hans ist Arzt geworden.

(Hans became a doctor.)

In addition to denoting either motion or change of condition, "sein" verbs are intransitive, that is to say, cannot take a direct object. Both of these requirements are usually met by a verb using sein as the auxiliary. Two exceptions are the verbs bleiben (to stay, remain) and sein itself, which do not denote motion or change of condition but nonetheless use sein as auxiliary.

The following "sein" verbs will be used in this module. Listen and repeat, noticing the English translation:

<u>bleiben</u>	to stay, remain
<u>gehen</u>	to go, walk
<u>fahren</u>	to drive, go
<u>kommen</u>	to come
<u>laufen</u>	to run
<u>reisen</u>	to travel
<u>fliegen</u>	to fly
<u>geschehen</u> (passieren)	to happen

werden

to become

sein

to be

Listen to and repeat the infinitive and past participle of each of the "sein" verbs below:

Infinitive

Past Participle

fahren	gefahren
laufen	gelaufen
<u>bleiben</u>	geblieben
reisen	gereist
fliegen	geflogen
geschehen (passieren)	geschehen (passiert)
kommen	gekommen
werden	geworden
gehen	gegangen
sein	gewesen

Study the above verbs and their past participles until you feel you know them thoroughly, then turn the page for exercises.

Write the past participle of each verb in the space provided:

1. gehen
2. werden
3. fahren
4. reisen
5. geschehen
6. fliegen
7. laufen
8. bleiben
9. sein
10. kommen

Listen to the infinitive, then say the corresponding past participle:

1. gehen
2. geschehen
3. sein
4. bleiben
5. reisen
6. kommen
7. fahren
8. werden
9. laufen
10. fliegen
11. passieren

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

NOTES

NOTES

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

NOTES

- _____ 1. gegangen
- _____ 2. geworden
- _____ 3. gefahren
- _____ 4. gereist
- _____ 5. geschehen
- _____ 6. geflogen
- _____ 7. gelaufen
- _____ 8. geblieben
- _____ 9. gewesen
- _____ 10. gekommen

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate form of the present perfect tense. Remember to use sein as the auxiliary.

1. Hans flew to London for the weekend. (fliegen)

Hans _____ übers Wochenende nach London

_____.

2. Mr. and Mrs. Müller drove to Italy yesterday. (fahren)

Herr und Frau Müller _____ gestern nach

Italien _____.

3. Did you travel through Germany? (reisen)

_____ ihr durch Deutschland

_____?

4. Mr. Schmidt, were you sick yesterday? (sein)

Herr Schmidt, _____ Sie gestern krank

_____?

5. Last night we stayed at home. (bleiben)

Gestern abend _____ wir zu Hause

_____.

6. Why did you come so late? (kommen)

Warum _____ du so spät _____?

7. What has happened? (geschehen)

Was _____ denn _____?

8. The child ran into the garden. (laufen)

Das Kind _____ in den Garten

_____.

9. Ingrid and Maria have already gone home. (gehen)

Ingrid und Maria _____ schon nach Hause

_____.

10. Peter became an officer. (werden)

Peter _____ Offizier _____.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

_____ 1. ist geflogen

_____ 2. sind gefahren

_____ 3. Seid gereist

_____ 4. sind gewesen

_____ 5. sind geblieben

_____ 6. bist gekommen

_____ 7. ist geschehen

_____ 8. ist gelaufen

_____ 9. sind gegangen

_____ 10. ist geworden

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences, using the appropriate present perfect tense form of the verbs in parentheses.

1. I haven't been to the movies in a long time. (sein)
Ich lange nicht im Kino
2. Have they already gone on vacation? (fahren)
.... sie schon in Urlaub?
3. The soldiers flew to Germany this morning.
(fliegen)
Die Soldaten heute morgen nach Deutschland
4. The students traveled through all of Europe.
(reisen)
Die Schüler durch ganz Europa
5. Did Peter come by car or by plane? (kommen)
.... Peter mit dem Auto oder mit dem Flugzeug....?
6. It became very cold. (werden)
Es sehr kalt

7. Has Karl been to the doctor's this morning?
(sein)
.... Karl heute morgen beim Arzt?
8. They drove to the beach every day. (fahren)
Sie jeden Tag an den Strand
9. Paul ran quickly to the bus stop. (laufen)
Paul schnell zur Haltestelle
10. Dr. Schulz stayed home today. (bleiben)
Dr. Schulz heute zu Hause

The following exercises will review the present perfect tense of the groups of verbs studied in this module.

Verbs with Separable Prefixes

(Separable prefix verbs can have regular or irregular past participles. These verbs insert -ge- between the prefix and the past participle of the simple verb. Example: abholen - abgeholt.)

Fill in the blanks with the present perfect tense of the verb in parentheses.

1. He slowly opened the door. (aufmachen)

Er _____ langsam die Tür _____.

2. Did you bring along the city map? (mitbringen)

_____ du den Stadtplan _____?

3. Dr. Schulz wrote everything down. (aufschreiben)

Dr. Schulz _____ alles

_____.

4. We picked the children up from school. (abholen)

Wir _____ die Kinder von der Schule

_____.

5. The waiter poured the wine. (einschenken)

Der Kellner _____ den Wein

_____.

6. Did they take their children along to the beach? (mitnehmen)

_____ sie ihre Kinder an den Strand

_____?

7. I have never liked to invite him. (einladen)

Ich _____ ihn nie gern

_____.

8. They handed over all their cigarettes. (hergeben)

Sie _____ alle ihre Zigaretten

_____.

9. He accepted the invitation with pleasure. (annehmen)

Er _____ die Einladung gern

_____.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

_____ 1. hat aufgemacht

_____ 2. Hast mitgebracht

_____ 3. hat aufgeschrieben

_____ 4. haben abgeholt.

_____ 5. hat eingeschickt

_____ 6. Haben mitgenommen

_____ 7. habe eingeladen

_____ 8. haben hergegeben

_____ 9. hat angenommen

NOTES

Verbs with Inseparable Prefixes

(The past participles of inseparable prefix verbs do not use ge-. Otherwise, they have the same form as the past participle of the parent verb.

Example: verstehen - verstanden.)

1. We sold our house this morning. (verkaufen)

Wir _____ heute morgen unser Haus

_____.

2. Mrs. Müller liked my new apartment. (gefallen)

Meine neue Wohnung _____ Frau Müller

_____.

3. This book belonged to Hans. (gehören)

Dieses Buch _____ Hans _____.

4. We often visited our sick teacher. (besuchen)

Wir _____ oft unseren kranken Lehrer

_____.

5. Peter didn't understand Ingrid. (verstehen)

Peter _____ Ingrid nicht _____.

6. They ordered another bottle of wine. (bestellen)

Sie _____ noch eine Flasche Wein

_____.

Verbs of Foreign Origin Ending in "-ieren"

(Past participle does not use ge-. All verbs form their past participle regularly.)

1. Did you also study in Germany? (studieren)

_____ Sie auch in Deutschland

_____?

2. Peter repaired his car over the weekend. (reparieren)

Peter _____ übers Wochenende sein Auto

_____.

3. When did you shave your sick friend? (rasieren)

Wann _____ Sie Ihren kranken Freund

_____?

4. I congratulated her on her birthday. (gratulieren)

Ich _____ ihr zum Geburtstag

_____?

5. How many letters did he dictate to you? (diktieren)

Wie viele Briefe _____ er Ihnen

_____.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. haben verkauft
- _____ 2. hat gefallen
- _____ 3. hat gehört
- _____ 4. haben besucht
- _____ 5. hat verstanden
- _____ 6. haben bestellt

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. Haben studiert
- _____ 2. hat repariert
- _____ 3. haben rasiert
- _____ 4. habe gratuliert
- _____ 5. hat diktiert

Reflexive Verbs

NOTES

(Past participles can be regular or irregular. Reflexive personal pronoun follows the conjugated auxiliary verb.)

1. Ingrid washed her hair last night. (sich waschen)

Ingrid _____ gestern abend die Haare
_____.

2. My friends were very interested in the pictures.
(sich interessieren für)

Meine Freunde _____ sehr für die Bilder
_____.

3. Did you have fun on your trip? (sich amüsieren)

Sie _____ auf Ihrer Reise gut
_____?

4. I bought myself an interesting book. (sich kaufen)

Ich _____ ein interessantes Buch
_____.

5. I didn't shave this morning. (sich rasieren)

Ich _____ heute morgen nicht
_____.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

NOTES

- _____ 1. hat sich
gewaschen
- _____ 2. haben sich
interessiert
- _____ 3. Haben sich
amüsiert
- _____ 4. habe mir
gekauft
- _____ 5. habe mich
rasiert

Verbs Using the Auxiliary "Sein"

(Past participles are regular or irregular, usually irregular. Equivalent English expressions use a form of "to have," even though the German verb requires sein.)

1. My father was often sick. (sein)

Mein Vater _____ oft krank

_____.

2. Did you go by bus or by car? (fahren)

_____ ihr mit dem Bus oder mit dem Auto

_____?

3. When did you get home last night? (kommen)

Wann _____ du gestern abend nach Hause

_____?

4. Mr. and Mrs. Meyer traveled to Europe. (reisen)

Herr und Frau Meyer _____ nach Europa

_____.

5. I have never flown to Munich. (fliegen)

Ich _____ noch nie nach München

_____.

6. Say, what did happen? (geschehen)

Sag mal, was _____ eigentlich

_____?

7. Why did you become a teacher? (werden)

Warum _____ Sie Lehrer _____?

8. Maria and Peter have already gone home. (gehen)

Maria und Peter _____ schon nach Hause

_____.

9. How long did you stay in Berlin? (bleiben)

Wie lange _____ ihr in Berlin

_____?

10. Did the child run into the street? (laufen)

_____ das Kind auf die Strasse

_____?

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

_____ 1. ist gewesen

_____ 2. Seid gefahren

_____ 3. bist gekommen

_____ 4. sind gereist

_____ 5. bin geflogen

_____ 6. ist geschehen

_____ 7. sind geworden

_____ 8. sind gegangen

_____ 9. seid geblieben

_____ 10. Ist gelaufen

START THE TAPE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS OF

COMMONLY USED STRONG VERBS

As presented in Lessons 21 and 22, you know already that most verbs in German are weak, i.e. they do not change their word stem to form the Imperfect (Past) tense or its Past Participle.

Infinitive	Imperfect	Past Participle
e.g. machen	machte	gemacht
spielen	spielte	gespielt

In the case of strong verbs in German, there are distinct changes in the word stem of the verb to form the Imperfect and Past Participle. Therefore, the following is a list of common strong German verbs and their principal parts. (It is important to note that whenever you learn a new strong verb you should memorize its principal parts.)

Note: The following is listed according to Pattern Change.

Infinitive	3rd Person Sing. Present	Imperfect	Past Participle
ei	ei	ie	ie
bleiben (to remain)	bleibt	blieb	ist geblieben
gedeihen (to thrive)	gedeiht	gedieh	ist gediehen
leihen (to lend)	leiht	lieh	geliehen
meiden (to avoid)	meidet	mied	gemieden

Infinitive	3rd Person Sing. Present	Imperfect	Past Participle
ei	ei	ie	ie
preisen (to praise)	preist	pries	gepreisen
reiben (to rub)	reibt	rieb	gerieben
scheiden (to separate)	scheidet	schied	geschieden
scheinen (to shine, seem)	scheint	schien	geschienen
schreiben (to write)	schreibt	schrieb	geschrieben
schreien (to scream)	schreit	schrie	geschrien
schweigen (to be silent)	schweigt	schwieg	geschwiegen
steigen (to climb)	steigt	stieg	ist gestiegen
treiben (to drive)	treibt	trieb	getrieben
weisen (to point out)	weist	wies	gewiesen

Infinitive ei	3rd Person Sing. Present ei	Imperfect i	Past Participle i	Infinitive ei	3rd Person Sing. Present ei	Imperfect i	Past Participle i
beißen (to bite, to cut)	beißt	biß	gebissen	schreiten (to stride)	schreitet	schritt	ist geschritten
gleichen (to equal)	gleich	glich	geglichen	streichen (to cancel, to paint)	streicht	strich	gestrichen
gleiten (to glide)	gleitet	glitt	geglitten	streiten (to quarrel)	streitet	stritt	gestritten
greifen (to seize)	greift	griff	gegriffen	weichen	weicht	wich	ist gewichen
leiden (to suffer)	leidet	litt	gelitten				
pfeifen (to whistle)	pfeift	pfiff	gepfiffen				
reißen (to tear)	reißt	riß	gerissen				
schleichen (to sneak)	schleicht	schlich	ist geschlichen				
schleifen (to polish)	schleift	schlief	geschliffen				
schmeißen (to fling)	schmeißt	schmiß	geschmissen				
schneiden (to cut)	schneidet	schnitt	geschnitten				

Infinitive	3rd Person Sing. Present	Imperfect	Past Participle	Infinitive	3rd Person Sing. Present	Imperfect	Past Participle
ie	ie	o	o	ie	ie	o	o
biegen (to bend)	biegt	bog	gebogen	wiegen (to weigh)	wiegt	wog	gewogen
bieten (to offer)	bietet	bot	geboten	ziehen (to pull)	zieht	zog	gezogen
fliegen (to fly)	fliegt	flog	ist geflogen	saufen (to drink)	säuft	soff	gesoffen
fliehen (to flee)	flieht	floh	ist geflohen	saugen (to suck)	saugt	sog	gesogen
fließen (to flow)	fließt	floß	ist geflossen	heben (to lift)	hebt	hob	gehoben
frieren (to freeze)	friert	fror	gefroren	liegen (to lie)	liegt	exception lag	gelegen
genießen (to enjoy)	genießt	genoß	genossen				
riechen (to smell)	riecht	roch	gerochen				
schieben (to shove)	schiebt	schob	geschoben				
schießen (to shoot)	schießt	schoß	geschossen				
schließen (to close)	schließt	schloß	geschlossen				

Infinitive	3rd Person Sing. Present	Imperfect	Past Participle	Infinitive	3rd Person Sing. Present	Imperfect	Past Participle
i	i	a	u	i	i	a	u
binden (to bind)	bindet	band	gebunden	zwingen (to force)	zwingt	zwang	gezwungen
dringen (to urge)	dringt	drang	ist gedrungen	i	i	a	o
finden (to find)	findet	fand	gefunden	beginnen (to begin)	beginnt	begann	begonnen
gelingen (to succeed)	gelingt	gelang	ist gelungen	gewinnen (to win)	gewinnt	gewann	gewonnen
klingen (to ring)	klingt	klang	geklungen	schwimmen (to swim)	schwimmt	schwamm	ist geschwommen
ringen (to struggle)	ringt	rang	gerungen	spinnen (to spin)	spinnt	spann	gesponnen
schwingen (to swing)	schwingt	schwang	geschwungen	e	i, ie, e	a	e
singen (to sing)	singt	sang	gesungen	essen (to eat)	ißt	aß	gegessen
springen (to jump)	springt	sprang	ist gesprungen	geben (to give)	gibt	gab	gegeben
stinken (to stink)	stinkt	stank	gestunken	genesen (to recover)	genest	genas	ist genesen
trinken (to drink)	trinkt	trank	getrunken	geschehen (to happen)	geschieht	geschah	ist geschehen

Infinitive	3rd Person			Infinitive	3rd Person		
	Sing. Present	Imperfect	Past Participle		Sing. Present	Imperfect	Past Participle
e	i, ie, e	a	e	e	i, ie	a	o
lesen (to read)	liest	las	gelesen	nehmen (to take)	nimmt	nahm	genommen
messen (to measure)	mißt	maß	gemessen	sprechen (to speak)	spricht	sprach	gesprachen
sehen (to see)	sieht	sah	gesehen	stehlen (to steal)	stiehlt	stahl	gestohlen
treten (to step)	tritt	trat	ist getreten	sterben (to die)	stirbt	starb	ist gestorben
vergessen (to forget)	vergißt	vergaß	vergessen	treffen (to meet)	trifft	traf	getroffen
e	i, ie	a	o	verderben (to spoil)	verdirbt	verdarb	verdorben
befehlen (to order)	befiehlt	befahl	befohlen	werben (to solicit)	wirbt	warb	geworben
beigen (to save)	birgt	borg	geborgen	werfen (to throw)	wirft	warf	geworfen
brechen (to break)	bricht	brach	gebrochen	a	ä, a	u	a
empfehlen (to recommend)	empfiehlt	empfohl	empfohlen	backen (to bake)	bäckt	buk	gebacken
helfen (to help)	hilft	half	geholfen	fahren (to travel)	fährt	fuhr	ist gefahren

Infinitive	3rd Person Sing. Present	Imperfect	Past Participle	Infinitive	3rd Person Sing. Present	Imperfect	Past Participle
a	ä, a	u	a	a	ä	ie	a
graben (to dig)	gräbt	grub	gegraben	raten (to advise)	rät	riet	geraten
schaffen (to create)	schafft	schuf	geschaffen	schlafen	schläft	schlief	geschlafen
schlagen (to beat)	schlägt	schlug	geschlagen	heißen (to be called)	heißt	hieß	gehießen
tragen (to carry)	trägt	trug	getragen	laufen (to run)	läuft	lief	ist gelaufen
wachsen (to grow)	wächst	wuchs	ist gewachsen	rufen (to call)	ruft	rief	gerufen
a	ä	ie	a	stoßen (to push)	stößt	stieß	gestoßen
blasen (to blow)	bläst	blies	geblasen	gehen (to go)	geht	ging	ist gegangen
braten (to roast)	brät	briet	gebraten	haben (to have)	hat	hatte	gehabt
fallen (to fall)	fällt	fiel	ist gefallen	kommen (to come)	kommt	kam	ist gekommen
halten (to hold)	hält	hielt	gehalten	sein (to be)	ist	war	ist gewesen
lassen (to let)	lässt	ließ	gelassen				

Infinitive	3rd Person Sing. Present	Imperfect	Past Participle	Infinitive	3rd Person Sing. Present	Imperfect	Past Participle
tun (to do)	tut	tat	getan	kennen (to know)	kennt	kannte	gekannt
werden (to become)	wird	wurde	ist geworden	nennen (to name)	nennt	nannte	genannt
Modal's				rennen (to run)	rennt	rannte	gerannt
dürfen	darf	durfte	gedurft	senden (to send)	sendet	sandte	gesandt
können	kann	konnte	gekonnt	wenden (to turn)	wendet	wandte	gewandt
mögen	mag	mochte	gemocht	wissen (to know a fact)	weiß	wußte	gewußt
müssen	muß	mußte	gemußt				
sollen	soll	sollte	gesollt				
wollen	will	wollte	gewollt				

Principal Parts of Irregular Mixed Verbs

brennen (to burn)	brennt	brannte	gebrannt
bringen (to bring)	bringt	brachte	gebracht
denken (to think)	denkt	dachte	gedacht

LESSON 23

Section 1

Transposed Word Order after Subordinating Conjunctions

A pervasive characteristic of German grammar is the use of the so-called "transposed word order" in subordinate clauses. In this **lesson**, you will learn to form sentences containing various kinds of subordinate clauses, each of which requires transposed word order. The **lesson** is divided into the following sections:

1. Transposed Word Order after Subordinating Conjunctions
2. Transposed Word Order in Subordinate Clauses using Separable Prefix Verbs, Modal Auxiliary Verbs, Reflexive Constructions, and Present Perfect Tense
3. Transposed Word Order in Subordinate Clauses Following Question Words
4. Sentences Beginning with a Subordinate Clause.

Notice the following English sentences:

He sees that the cup is on the table.

We are not going swimming because it is cold.

She goes into the restaurant while he parks the car.

The soldier leaves before the lieutenant arrives.

She asks if we speak French.

In each of the above sentences, the underlined group of words constitutes a subordinate clause which adds supplementary information to the main clause of the sentence. In the first sentence, "that the cup is on the table" (subordinate clause) tells what it is that "He sees" (main clause). In the second sentence, "because it is cold" (subordinate clause) explains why "we are not going swimming" (main clause).

Main clauses and subordinate clauses can also be distinguished from one another in that main clauses can stand as complete sentences: "He sees.", "We are not going swimming.", while subordinate clauses ("that the cup is on the table," "because it is cold") cannot stand in isolation as complete sentences.

For each of the following sentences, draw a double line under the main clause and a single line under the subordinate clause.

1. The student studies before he goes to the movie.
2. The class begins as soon as the bell rings.
3. I don't know if they are going to the beach.
4. She is waiting until the mail comes.
5. He thinks that the girl is pretty.

CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

1. The student studies before he goes to the movie.
2. The class begins as soon as the bell rings.
3. I don't know if they are going to the beach.
4. She is waiting until the mail comes.
5. He thinks that the girl is pretty.

What is the grammatical name for the first element of the subordinate clauses in the above sentences (i.e., "before," "as soon as," "if," etc.)?

Each of these is called a subordinating conjunction because it joins a subordinate clause to the main clause.

One of the most typical and most pervasive aspects of German word order is the transposition of the conjugated (or inflected) verb in subordinate clauses. This simply means that in subordinate

clauses (with a few exceptions to be discussed), the verb form which takes endings appropriate to its subject goes to the end of the clause. For example, consider the sentence:

Ich weiss, dass er morgen kommt.

(I know he is coming tomorrow.)

Say aloud the subordinate clause.

Within the subordinate clause, say the verb corresponding to the subject of the clause (er).

The conjugated verb kommt, which agrees with the subject of the clause, er, appears at the END of the clause, behind all the other clause elements. This placement rule applies regardless of the number or complexity of the other clause elements:

Ich weiss, dass er morgen kommt.

Ich weiss, dass er Freitag morgen kommt.

Ich weiss, dass er Freitag morgen um 10 Uhr kommt.

You should also note that subordinate clauses in German must use a subordinating conjunction, even though the corresponding English construction may omit the conjunction:

I know he is coming tomorrow.

BUT: Ich weiss, dass er morgen kommt.

In written German, a comma is always used to separate the main clause and the subordinate clause.

In this **lesson**, we will practice sentences using the subordinating conjunctions shown below. Repeat the German sentences, noticing the English translation of the conjunction and any special information on its use.

1. dass that

Der Lehrer sagt, dass er keine Zeit hat.

(The teacher says [that] he doesn't have any time.)

2. sobald as soon as

Ich rufe dich an, sobald ich nach Hause komme.

(I am going to call you as soon as I come home.)

3. damit so that

Ich schreibe Peter, damit er uns in Berlin besucht.

(I am writing Peter so that he will visit us in Berlin.)

4. obwohl although, though

Herr Meyer kauft sich kein anderes Haus, obwohl sein altes Haus zu klein ist.

(Mr. Meyer is not buying another house although his old house is too small.)

5. bevor before

Ingrid liest die Zeitung, bevor sie im Garten arbeitet

(Ingrid reads the paper before she works in the garden.)

NOTE: bevor is a cognate of the English "before.")

6. seit [seitdem] since, [referring
ever since only to time]

Hans sieht besser aus, seitdem er nicht mehr raucht.

(Hans looks better since he stopped smoking.)

7. wenn when (in the sense of
whenever); if

Peter verabredet sich immer mit Ingrid, wenn er ins Kino geht.

(Peter always makes a date with Ingrid when he goes to the movies.)

Ich fahre nach Deutschland, wenn ich Geld habe.

(I will go to Germany if I have the money.)

NOTE: The use of wenn to mean "if" rather than "when(ever)" depends on sentence context. You should not be surprised to encounter wenn frequently in its "if" meaning, especially in the subjunctive mood (Module 39):

Ich würde ihn besuchen, wenn ich Zeit hätte.

(I would visit him if I had time.)

8. weil since (in the sense of because)

9. da since (in the sense of because)

Hans muss heute zu Hause bleiben, weil er krank ist.
(Hans has to stay at home today since he's sick.)

Heidi macht heute einen Spaziergang, da das Wetter schön ist.

(Heidi is taking a walk today since the weather is nice.)

NOTE: Weil and da are quite close in meaning, except that weil suggests a strong causal connection between the action expressed in the main and subordinate clauses. In the examples above, Hans must stay in bed as a necessary consequence of his illness (hence, weil). Heidi is going swimming since the weather is nice, but the state of the weather is not compelling her to do so (hence, da).

10. während while (referring only to time)

Herr Müller wäscht sein Auto, während Frau Müller Briefe schreibt.

(Mr. Müller washes his car while Mrs. Müller writes letters.)

Study these subordinating conjunctions and their use until you feel you know them thoroughly, then turn the page for further exercises.

Listen to and repeat the following German sentences, then give the English meaning of the sentence.
For example:

You see and hear: Hans sagt, dass er sehr müde ist.

You repeat: Hans sagt, dass er sehr müde ist.

You say: Hans says that he is very tired.

1. Herr Müller trinkt ein Glas Milch, bevor er im Garten arbeitet.
2. Hans schreibt Inge, damit sie ihn nicht vergisst.
3. Ich rufe dich an, sobald ich Zeit habe.
4. Frau Müller trinkt den Kaffee nicht, weil er zu stark ist.
5. Herr Meyer fährt nie auf Urlaub, obwohl er sehr reich ist.
6. Ich spreche nicht mehr mit Peter, seit er eine neue Freundin hat.
7. Fritz ruft uns immer an, wenn er in Köln ist.
8. Herr Müller liest die Zeitung, während seine Frau das Essen macht.
9. Inge sagt, dass sie ein Buch braucht.
10. Der Soldat besucht seine Eltern, da er Urlaub hat.
11. Kauf mir eine Zeitschrift, wenn du in die Stadt fährst!

Fill in the appropriate subordinating conjunction and the subordinate clause verb on the basis of the given English.

1. I know that he is rich.

Ich weiss, _____ er reich _____.

2. Hans isn't visiting his friends although he has time.

Hans besucht seine Freunde nicht, _____ er
Zeit _____.

3. Mr. Meyer takes off his shoes as soon as he comes home.

Herr Meyer zieht sich die Schuhe aus, _____
er nach Hause _____.

4. She doesn't understand him whenever he speaks German.

Sie versteht ihn nicht, _____ er Deutsch
_____.

5. Mrs. Schmitt visits her neighbors while her husband works in the garden.

Frau Schmitt besucht ihre Nachbarn, _____
ihr Mann im Garten _____.

6. Mr. Schulz always buys a paper before he drives to work.

Herr Schulz kauft immer eine Zeitung, _____
er zur Arbeit _____.

7. Franz can't eat at the restaurant because he doesn't have any money.

Franz kann nicht im Restaurant essen, _____
er kein Geld _____.

8. We are speaking loudly, so that they hear us.

Wir sprechen laut, _____ sie uns _____.

9. Inge and Peter don't write us anymore since they have been living in Berlin.

Inge und Peter schreiben uns nicht mehr,
_____ sie in Berlin _____.

10. He invites him to dinner since he knows him well.

Er lädt ihn zum Essen ein, _____ er ihn gut
_____.

11. I'll write him as soon as I find his address.

Ich schreibe ihm, _____ ich seine Adresse
_____.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. dass ist
- _____ 2. obwohl hat
- _____ 3. sobald kommt
- _____ 4. wenn spricht
- _____ 5. während arbeitet
- _____ 6. bevor fährt

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 7. weil hat
- _____ 8. damit hören
- _____ 9. seitdem wohnen
- _____ 10. da kennt
- _____ 11. sobald finde

START THE TAPE.

NOTES

Say complete German sentences, supplying the subordinating conjunction and the appropriate form of the subordinate clause verb.

1. He greets her whenever he sees her.
Er grüsst sie immer, er sie
2. We are going to buy a new sofa as soon as we have enough money.
Wir kaufen ein neues Sofa, wir genug Geld ...
3. Put the book on the table so that he sees it!
Leg das Buch auf den Tisch, er es!
4. Robert speaks better German ever since he has been living in Germany.
Robert spricht besser Deutsch, er in Deutschland
5. The children are going home early today because their teacher is sick.
Die Kinder gehen heute früh nach Hause, ihr Lehrer krank
6. The gentleman runs fast although he is very old.
Der Herr läuft schnell, er sehr alt
7. Hans shaves while Peter makes breakfast.
Hans rasiert sich, Peter das Frühstück
8. The officer goes to the bank before he drives to Munich.
Der Offizier geht zur Bank, er nach München

9. Are you coming along if you have time?

Kommst du mit, du Zeit?

10. The soldier orders another beer because he likes it. (use schmecken)

Der Soldat bestellt sich noch ein Bier, es ihm

11. I know that he is already home.

Ich weiss, er schon zu Hause

Write the German, paying special attention to the subordinating conjunction and sentence word order.

1. We are not wearing coats since it is warm.

2. I believe he is tired.

3. He will call [use present tense] as soon as he comes home.

4. I don't see him often because he is working.

5. Mr. Meyer never goes out although he is very rich.

6. The officer speaks German well ever since he has been stationed in Germany.

7. We call them whenever we have time.

8. Ingrid is making a dress for herself while Maria reads a book.

9. Mr. Meyer is staying at home because he is sick.

10. I am coming if it doesn't rain.

11. Peter eats breakfast before he goes to work.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

1. Wir tragen keine Mäntel, da es warm ist.

2. Ich glaube, dass er müde ist.

3. Er ruft an, sobald er nach Hause kommt.

4. Ich sehe ihn nicht oft, weil er arbeitet.

5. Herr Meyer geht nie aus, obwohl er sehr reich ist.

6. Der Offizier spricht gut Deutsch, seit er in
Deutschland stationiert ist.

7. Wir rufen sie an, wenn wir Zeit haben.

8. Ingrid macht sich ein Kleid, während Maria ein
Buch liest.

9. Herr Meyer bleibt zu Hause, weil er krank ist.

10. Ich komme, wenn es nicht regnet.

11. Peter frühstückt, bevor er zur Arbeit geht.

START THE TAPE.

Transposed Word Order in Subordinate Clauses

using Separable Prefix Verbs, Modal Auxiliary Verbs,
Reflexive Constructions, and Present Perfect Tense

Word order in subordinate clauses using separable prefix verbs follows the same rule that you have practiced in the preceding exercises. How would you say

"She is going out tomorrow night,"

using the separable prefix verb ausgehen?

(Note: This is a regular sentence pattern, not a subordinate clause.)

You would say:

Sie geht morgen abend aus.

putting the separable prefix at the end of the sentence.

Now consider how you would say the German equivalent of "I know that she is going out tomorrow night." The question is that of the proper word order following:

Ich weiss, dass sie

In the preceding pages, you learned that in subordinate clauses the conjugated verb moves to the end of the clause. This is true of separable prefix verbs, with the minor additional factor that the separable prefix also remains at the end of the clause (as you would expect), and is affixed to the front of the inflected verb:

Ich weiss, dass sie morgen abend ausgeht.

How would you say:

"She says that she is bringing along the books."

using the separable prefix verb mitbringen?

You would say:

Sie sagt, dass sie die Bücher mitbringt.

Word order in subordinate clauses using reflexive verbs demonstrates the same "conjugated-verb-at-the-end-of-the-clause" principle. The reflexive pronoun itself does not move from the regular sentence position. For example:

Frau Meyer unterhält sich mit dem Nachbarn.

Ich sehe, dass Frau Meyer sich mit dem Nachbarn
unterhält.

or reflexive constructions with separable prefix verbs:

Paul schenkt sich ein Glas Wein ein.

Heidi redet, während Paul sich ein Glas Wein
einschenkt.

NOTES

Write a subordinate clause to complete the German sentence on the basis of the given English. Use the separable prefix verb in parentheses, as well as the appropriate subordinating conjunction.

1. Hans shaves before he leaves. (abfahren)

Hans rasiert sich, _____.

2. Give him the address so that he can write [writes] it down! (aufschreiben)

Gib ihm die Adresse, _____!

3. We are taking Hans along, since he knows his way around Munich. (sich zurechtfinden)

Wir nehmen Hans mit, _____.

4. Ingrid is never ready when I pick her up. (abholen)

Ingrid ist nie fertig, _____.

5. Karl makes breakfast while Peter gets dressed. (sich anziehen)

Karl macht das Frühstück, _____.

6. I think they are building themselves a house. (sich bauen)

Ich glaube, _____.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. bevor er abfährt
- _____ 2. damit er sie
aufschreibt
- _____ 3. weil er sich in
München zurechtfindet
(or da)
- _____ 4. wenn ich sie abhole
- _____ 5. während Peter sich
anzieht
- _____ 6. dass sie sich ein Haus
bauen

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences, using the verb in parentheses, as well as the appropriate subordinating conjunction.

1. Maria looks much better ever since she has been wearing elegant dresses. (anhaben)
Maria sieht viel besser aus,
2. Inge believes that Hans is coming along. (mitkommen)
Inge glaubt,
3. Heidi likes the new student because he looks good. (aussehen)
Der neue Schüler gefällt Heidi,
4. I am staying home if Franz takes his dog along. (mitnehmen)
Ich bleibe zu Hause,
5. The children get dressed as soon as they get up. (aufstehen)
Die Kinder ziehen sich an,
6. Inge goes shopping while Peter looks at the new cars. [use Auto] (sich ansehen)
Inge geht einkaufen,

Modal auxiliary verbs in subordinate clauses should pose no difficulty if you remember that the conjugated verb goes to the end of the clause, with other sentence elements remaining unchanged. Consider the following sentence:

Ich muss nach Hause gehen.

What is the conjugated verb in this sentence?

How would you say:

"I know I have to go home."

using the modal auxiliary müssen?

You would say:

Ich weiss, dass ich nach Hause gehen muss.

Subordinate clauses containing both a modal auxiliary and a separable prefix verb have the following pattern:

Regular sentence order:

Heidi muss heute abend ausgehen.

Subordinate clause order:

Ich weiss, dass Heidi heute abend ausgehen muss.

Here again, the overall word order pattern for subordinate clauses applies: conjugated verb at the end of the clause, other sentence elements unchanged.

Complete the German sentences on the basis of the given English, using the verbs shown in parentheses.

1. Tell Hans that he may write to me! (dürfen; schreiben)
Sag Hans, _____!
2. The children are angry because they have to stay home. (müssen; bleiben)
Die Kinder sind böse, _____.
3. Karl has to make a phone call before he can go out. (können; ausgehen)
Karl muss telefonieren, _____.
4. He tells them that they are supposed to stay in Cologne. (sollen; bleiben)
Er sagt ihnen, _____.
5. She doesn't invite Paul, although he would like to come. (möchten; kommen)
Sie lädt Paul nicht ein, _____.
6. Go and get the children so that we can eat. (können; essen)
Hol die Kinder, _____!

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. dass er mir schreiben darf
- _____ 2. weil sie zu Hause bleiben müssen
- _____ 3. bevor er ausgehen kann
- _____ 4. dass sie in Köln bleiben sollen
- _____ 5. obwohl er gern kommen möchte
- _____ 6. damit wir essen können

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences on the basis of the given English. Use the verbs shown in parentheses.

1. He is looking bad ever since he has to work in the city. (müssen; arbeiten)
Er sieht schlecht aus,
2. They live in an apartment because they don't want to buy a house. (wollen; kaufen)
Sie wohnen in einer Wohnung,
3. Bring your friend if he is allowed to come along. (dürfen; mitkommen)
Bring deinen Freund,
4. He has himself picked up ever since he cannot walk well any more. (können; gehen)
Er lässt sich abholen,
5. Heidi is going dancing as soon as she is allowed to go out. (dürfen; ausgehen)
Heidi geht tanzen,
6. She is never home when he wants to talk to her. (möchten; sprechen)
Sie ist nie zu Hause,
7. We are learning German so that we can study in Germany. (können; studieren)
Wir lernen Deutsch,

All of the sentences in the preceding exercises were in the present tense. It is of course also possible to use subordinate clauses with other tenses, such as the present perfect tense which you studied in Lessons 22 and 21.

You will remember that the present perfect tense is formed by using the appropriate form of the auxiliary verb haben (or in some cases, sein), together with the past participle of the main verb:

Er hat eine Zeitung gekauft.

(He bought a newspaper.)

In the above sentence, what is the conjugated verb?

With this clue in mind, and remembering the general rule for subordinate clause word order, what is the German equivalent of:

I know he bought a newspaper.

Ich weiss, dass er eine Zeitung gekauft hat.

Complete the German sentences on the basis of the given English, using the present perfect tense of the verbs in parentheses.

1. The students fly to Germany after they have learned German. (lernen)
[use the conjunction nachdem; see note below*]

Die Schüler fliegen nach Deutschland, _____.

2. She is angry at Hans because he stayed home. (bleiben)

Sie ist böse auf Hans, _____.

3. The children played in the garden while their parents worked. (arbeiten)

Die Kinder haben im Garten gespielt, _____.

4. Mr. Meyer has no money, ever since he bought the big house. (kaufen)

Herr Meyer hat kein Geld, _____.

5. Please call me as soon as he has left! (abfahren)

Ruf mich bitte an, _____!

6. Did you see them before they went to Berlin? (fahren)

Habt ihr sie gesehen, _____?

7. Karl tells me that he studied in Munich. (studieren)

Karl sagt mir, _____.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

*Nachdem ("after") is used only in past tense constructions. For this reason, it is introduced here rather than in earlier exercises.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. nachdem sie Deutsch
gelernt haben
- _____ 2. weil er zu Hause ge-
blieben ist
- _____ 3. während ihre Eltern ge-
arbeitet haben
- _____ 4. seitdem er das grosse
Haus gekauft hat
- _____ 5. sobald er abgefahren
ist
- _____ 6. bevor sie nach Berlin
gefahren sind
- _____ 7. dass er in München
studiert hat

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences on the basis of the given English, using the present perfect tense of the verbs in parentheses.

1. He takes a trip after he bought the car.
[use Auto] (kaufen)
Er macht eine Reise,
2. She says that he has been sick. (sein)
Sie sagt,
3. Franz is tired because he played football.
(spielen)
Franz ist müde,
4. Heidi drove home early because her friend [fem.]
didn't come. (kommen)
Heidi ist früh nach Hause gefahren,
5. Mr. Meyer took a walk while his wife visited her
girl friend. (besuchen)
Herr Meyer hat einen Spaziergang gemacht,
6. He doesn't like the new car although he just (use
gerade) bought it. (kaufen)
Das neue Auto gefällt ihm nicht,

The following two exercises include all the subordinate clause patterns you have learned in this section. Write the appropriate subordinate clause on the basis of the given English. Note that different types of verbs are used (reflexives, modal auxiliaries, etc.) as well as present and present perfect tenses.

1. We are not going to the beach because it is too cold. (sein)

Wir gehen nicht an den Strand, _____.

2. Are you going to write to me as soon as you come back from Berlin? (zurückkommen)

Schreibst du mir, _____?

3. He sold his car after he repaired it. (reparieren)

Er hat sein Auto verkauft, _____.

4. Hans wants to go out with you if you have time. (haben)

Hans will mit dir ausgehen, _____.

5. Peter is buying himself a city map because he doesn't know the town. (kennen)

Peter kauft sich einen Stadtplan, _____
_____.

6. They are drinking coffee while they converse. (sich unterhalten)

Sie trinken Kaffee, _____.

7. Tell him that he must come tonight!

Sag ihm, _____!

8. Peter eats breakfast before he shaves. (sich rasieren)

Peter frühstückt, _____.

9. They always go for a walk after they have eaten. (essen)

Sie gehen immer spazieren, _____.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

NOTES

NOTES

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. da es zu kalt ist
- _____ 2. sobald du von Berlin
zurückkommst
- _____ 3. nachdem er es repariert
hat
- _____ 4. wenn du Zeit hast
- _____ 5. weil (or da) er die
Stadt nicht kennt

_____ 6. während sie sich unter-
halten

_____ 7. dass er heute abend
kommen muss

_____ 8. bevor er sich rasiert

_____ 9. nachdem sie gegessen
haben

START THE TAPE.

NOTES

Section 3

Transposed Word Order in Subordinate Clauses Following Question Words

Consider the following sentences:

1. Führt Karl nach Deutschland?
(Is Karl going to Germany?)
2. Wann fährt Karl nach Deutschland?
(When is Karl going to Germany?)

You are familiar with the word order in the first German sentence above. This is simply the transformation of a declarative sentence (Karl fährt nach Deutschland) into an interrogative sentence by inverting the position of subject and verb:

Führt Karl nach Deutschland?

If so-called "question words," such as wann ("when"), warum ("why"), wo ("where"), was ("what"), and wer ("who") are added, they do not affect the inverted word order you have already learned for questions:

Führt Karl nach Deutschland?

Wann fährt Karl nach Deutschland?

When such questions as Wann fährt Karl nach Deutschland? are preceded by certain commonly-used expressions such as:

Wissen Sie ("do you know")

Können Sie mir sagen ("can you tell me")

Darf ich fragen ("may I ask")

Ich möchte wissen ("I'd like to know")

the following clause becomes subordinate and must thus use the transposed word order common to subordinate clauses.

Consider the question:

Wann fährt Karl nach Deutschland?

If it were to be preceded by Wissen Sie, how would the word order be changed? As you know, the inflected verb (in this example, fährt) would be placed at the end of the clause, with other clause elements remaining unchanged.

Say a sentence combining

Wissen Sie and Wann fährt Karl nach Deutschland?,

using the necessary subordinate clause word order. The correct answer would be:

Wissen Sie, wann Karl nach Deutschland fährt?

(Do you know when Karl is going to Germany?)

Note that the written German sentence uses a comma to separate the main clause (Wissen Sie) from the subordinate clause, as you remember from preceding exercises. If the main clause is itself a question (as for example, Wissen Sie, Darf ich fragen), the combined sentence uses a question mark:

Darf ich fragen, wo Sie wohnen?

(May I ask where you live?)

If the main clause is not a question (for example, Ich möchte wissen), the combined sentence does not use a question mark:

Ich möchte wissen, warum er das macht.

(I'd like to know why he's doing that.)

Listen to and repeat the following German sentences, noticing the English translation. You will note that separable prefix verbs, modal auxiliary verbs, and both present and present perfect tenses are used in the subordinate clause. In all cases, the general subordinate clause word order applies: conjugated verb at the end of the clause, other sentence elements unchanged.

1. Weisst du, wann Peter kommt?
(Do you know when Peter is coming?)
2. Können Sie mir sagen, wann Inge nach Köln fährt?
(Can you tell me when Inge is going to Cologne?)
3. Ich möchte wissen, was ihm passiert ist.
(I would like to know what happened to him.)
4. Darf ich fragen, was er machen will?
(May I ask what he intends to do?)
5. Ich möchte wissen, wann Herr Meyer sich das neue Auto kauft.
(I would like to know when Mr. Meyer is going to buy the new car.)
6. Wissen Sie, warum Dr. Schulz abfährt?
(Do you know why Dr. Schulz is leaving?)
7. Kannst du mir sagen, wo du diesen warmen Mantel gekauft hast?
(Can you tell me where you bought that warm coat?)
8. Wissen Sie, warum er morgen abend nach München fährt?
(Do you know why he is going to Munich tomorrow?)

Say complete German sentences on the basis of the given English. Use the verbs shown in parentheses.

1. He doesn't visit us although he has time. (haben)
Er besucht uns nicht,
2. She is never ready when he picks her up. (abholen)
Sie ist nie fertig,
3. He can find his way around town ever since he bought a city map. (kaufen)
Er findet sich in der Stadt zurecht,
4. Tell them they are allowed to bring the children along! (dürfen - mitbringen)
Sagen Sie ihnen,!
5. Hans intends to sell his sports car as soon as he finds a new one. (finden)
Hans will seinen Sportwagen verkaufen,
6. Mrs. Meyer is not inviting Mrs. Müller because she doesn't know her well. (kennen)
Frau Meyer lädt Frau Müller nicht ein,
7. Mr. Müller goes to the movies while Mrs. Müller buys herself a new dress. (sich kaufen)
Herr Müller geht ins Kino,

Write complete German sentences on the basis of the given English.

1. Do you [formal] know when he is going to the movies?
_____?
2. May I ask why Heidi didn't come?
_____?
3. They would like to know where he lives.
_____.
4. Can you [fam., sing.] tell me why Hans doesn't want to write?
_____?
5. Do you [formal] know what he has brought along?
_____?
6. I would like to know where Inge bought the book.
_____.
7. May I ask when they are meeting each other? (use sich treffen)
_____?

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

1. Wissen Sie, wann er ins Kino geht?

2. Darf ich fragen, warum Heidi nicht gekommen ist?

3. Sie möchten wissen, wo er wohnt.

4. Kannst du mir sagen, warum Hans nicht schreiben will?

5. Wissen Sie, was er mitgebracht hat?

6. Ich möchte gern wissen, wo Inge das Buch gekauft hat.

7. Darf ich fragen, wann sie sich treffen?

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences on the basis of the given English.

1. Can you [fam. sing] tell me when the train is leaving?

2. May I ask where you [formal] bought that coat?

3. I would like to know why he doesn't write.

4. Do you [formal] know when Mr. Meyer sold his house?

5. Can you [formal] tell us where Hans has been?

6. We would like to know what they said.

7. May I ask why you [fam. plur.] don't get dressed?

NOTES

Sentences Beginning with a Subordinate Clause

In all the preceding exercises, you practiced sentences in which the subordinate clause followed the main clause, for example:

Main Clause

Subordinate Clause

Er kann nicht kommen, weil er krank ist.

(He can't come because he's sick.)

It is also possible for subordinate clauses to begin a sentence, with the main clause following:

Subordinate Clause

Main Clause

Weil er krank ist, kann er nicht kommen.

(Because he's sick, he can't come.)

What do you notice about the word order in the main clause of the second German sentence, by comparison to the word order of the main clause in the first sentence?

In the main clause of the second sentence, the subject and verb are inverted, that is to say, the subject is placed behind the verb rather than in front of it as is normally the case. You have already encountered this phenomenon in sentences such as:

Heute geht er in die Stadt.

in which the presence of the adverbial expression heute at the beginning of the sentence produces inverted word order for the subject and verb.

When subordinate clauses precede the main clause of a sentence, they "trigger" subject-verb inversion in the main clause in the same manner. You should note that the subordinate clause itself is not changed in any way from the form it would have if it followed the main clause.

NOTES

There is one caution to observe, as illustrated by the following example:

Peter kauft eine Zeitung, bevor er zur Arbeit geht.

(Peter buys a newspaper before he goes to work.)

If the subordinate clause were placed at the beginning of the sentence, we would have:

(*)Bevor er zur Arbeit geht, kauft Peter eine Zeitung.

(Before he goes to work, Peter buys a newspaper.)

Although the above sentence is grammatically correct, there is a strong tendency in German to identify the subject by name in the first clause of the sentence, rather than in a later portion of the sentence. In this way, the listener or reader is more immediately aware of the person or thing under discussion. This applies to all noun subjects, including both proper names (Peter, Frau Schmidt) and common nouns (das Auto, der Anzug, die Adresse). Normally, the sentence above would be phrased like this:

Bevor Peter zur Arbeit geht, kauft er eine Zeitung.

(Before Peter goes to work, he buys a newspaper.)

Say rephrased sentences, so that the subordinate clause is in the beginning. Remember the caution about nouns and make the necessary noun/pronoun adjustment.

1. Er holt mich ab, wenn er Zeit hat.
2. Die Kinder gehen zu Bett, nachdem sie sich gewaschen haben.
3. Hans geht heute abend nicht ins Kino, da er keine Zeit hat.
4. Ich kaufe mir einen Porsche, sobald ich Geld habe.
5. Peter fährt dieses Jahr nach Amerika, während Franz nach Italien fährt.
6. Sie essen oft in diesem Restaurant, seitdem sie in der Stadt wohnen.
7. Franz ist doch gekommen, obwohl er nicht eingeladen war.
8. Sie schickt ihm immer Blumen, wenn er krank ist.
9. Ich habe nicht gewusst, dass Peter Soldat ist.

Relative Pronouns I

In this and the following **lesson**, you will learn the forms and meaning of the German relative pronouns and their use in relative clauses. The present **lesson** contains five sections: a general overview of relative pronouns, relative pronouns in the nominative, accusative and dative cases, respectively, and a final section in which all three case forms are combined.

1. Overview of Relative Pronouns

In the preceding **lesson**, you learned to distinguish between main clauses and subordinate clauses in sentences such as:

Ich kaufe mir ein Auto, sobald ich genug Geld habe.
(I am going to buy a car as soon as I have enough money.)

The main clause (Ich kaufe mir ein Auto) can stand alone as a complete sentence. The subordinate clause (sobald ich genug Geld habe) gives additional information about the subject being discussed in the main clause, but is not in itself a complete sentence.

The subordinate clauses in the preceding **lesson** were all attributable to the so-called subordinating conjunctions, (dass, wenn, sobald, während, etc.), which require the use of a subordinate clause when they appear in a sentence. There is another group of words which also introduce subordinate clauses—the relative pronouns, which you will learn in this and the following **lesson**.

Study the following English sentences:

1. This is the man whom I met yesterday.
2. The wine which he sells is very good.
3. The book that is on the table belongs to Professor Schulz.
4. The girl to whom Franz wrote is in America.
5. These are the things that you ordered from the store.

For each of the sentences above, draw a double line under the main clause and a single line under the subordinate clause. Note that in some cases the subordinate clause is placed within the main clause rather than at the end of the sentence.

The correct answers are:

This is the man whom I met yesterday.

The wine which he sells is very good.

The book that is on the table belongs to
Professor Schulz.

The girl to whom Franz wrote is in America.

These are the things that you ordered from the
store.

START THE TAPE.

Each of the subordinate clauses above is introduced by a word such as "whom," "that," "which," etc. Grammatically speaking, these words are called relative pronouns; the subordinate clauses which follow them are often referred to as relative clauses.

Relative pronouns can be thought of as "stand-ins" for persons or objects mentioned in the main clause. For example, in the sentence:

"The book which is on the table is very heavy."

the relative pronoun "which" substitutes or stands in for the subject of the main clause, "The book."

German also has a set of relative pronouns which introduce subordinate clauses and which "stand in for" persons or objects mentioned in the main clause. For each of the sentences below, draw a double line under the main clause and a single line under the subordinate clause. In addition, circle the relative pronoun.

1. Das ist der Professor, der heute abend spricht.
2. Sind das die Soldaten, die in München stationiert sind?
3. Ich kenne die Dame, der wir über die Strasse helfen.
4. Wo wohnen die Amerikaner, denen das teure Auto gehört?
5. Ist das die Frau, der du dein Haus verkauft hast?
6. Das ist der Schüler, den wir einladen wollen.
7. Siehst du die Dame, die aus dem Haus kommt?

The correct answers are:

1. Das ist der Professor, der heute abend spricht.
2. Sind das die Soldaten, die in München stationiert sind?
3. Ich kenne die Dame, der wir über die Strasse helfen.
4. Wo wohnen die Amerikaner, denen das teure Auto gehört?
5. Ist das die Frau, der du dein Haus verkauft hast?
6. Das ist der Schüler, den wir einladen wollen.
7. Siehst du die Dame, die aus dem Haus kommt?

START THE TAPE.

NOTES

In English, different forms of the relative pronoun are used depending on whether the pronoun refers to a person ("who," "whom") or a thing ("which," "that"). This distinction is not made in German. For example a German speaker would say:

Der Mann, der sehr alt ist

(The man who is very old)

or

Der Wein, der sehr alt ist

(The wine which [or, that] is very old)

using the same pronoun in both cases.

German pronouns do of course have a number of different forms, determined not by a "person-thing" distinction but instead by the gender and number of the noun to which the pronoun refers, as well as by the grammatical case of the pronoun within the subordinate clause. This will be explained at length in other sections of the module.

Although relative pronouns can in some cases be omitted in English relative clauses, they cannot be omitted in the corresponding German clauses. For example, it is possible in English to say either:

The man whom you saw is my brother.

using the relative pronoun "whom," or to simply say:

The man you saw is my brother.

omitting the relative pronoun. In German, however, the relative pronoun must be present:

Der Mann, den Sie gesehen haben, ist mein Bruder.

NOTES

Section 2

Nominative Case Forms of the Relative Pronouns

Listen to and repeat the following German sentences, noticing the English translation.

1. Der Mann, der vor dem Haus steht, ist mein Vater.
(The man who is standing in front of the house is my father.)
2. Die Dame, die das Haus kaufen will, ist sehr reich.
(The lady who wants to buy the house is very rich.)
3. Die Mädchen, die im Garten spielen, sind meine Schwestern.
(The girls playing in the garden are my sisters.)
4. Das Bild, das im Wohnzimmer hängt, ist schön.
(The picture that is hanging in the living room is beautiful.)
5. Die Soldaten, die aus dem Flugzeug steigen, sind müde.
(The soldiers coming out of the airplane are tired.)

6. Die Milch, die in der Küche steht, ist nicht mehr frisch.

(The milk that is standing in the kitchen is no longer fresh.)

7. Hast du ein Bier, das nicht so warm ist?

(Do you have a [bottle of] beer that isn't so warm?)

8. Die Damen, die aus dem Restaurant kommen, sind aus Amerika.

(The ladies who are coming out of the restaurant are from America.)

Let us examine the preceding German sentences carefully to determine the gender and number of the relative pronouns used. You will remember from the introductory paragraphs that the gender and number of the relative pronoun correspond to the gender and number of the noun to which the pronoun refers.

In the first sentence (Der Mann, der vor dem Haus steht, ist mein Vater.), to what noun does the relative pronoun der refer, and what is the gender and number of this noun?

The relative pronoun der refers to Mann, a masculine, singular noun. Thus, the gender and number of the relative pronoun is also masculine, singular.

In sentence 2 (Die Dame, die das Haus kaufen will, ist sehr reich.), what is the gender and number of the relative pronoun die?

It is feminine, singular, because the noun to which it refers (Dame) is feminine, singular.

What is the gender and number of the relative pronoun das in sentence 4 (Das Bild, das im Wohnzimmer hängt, ist schön.)?

It is neuter, singular, because the noun to which it refers (Bild), is neuter, singular.

What is the gender and number of the relative pronoun die in sentence 3 (Die Mädchen, die im Garten spielen, sind meine Schwestern.)?

This is a neuter, plural form, since die Mädchen in this sentence is neuter and plural.

What is the gender and number of the relative pronoun die in sentence 5 (Die Soldaten, die aus dem Flugzeug steigen, sind müde.)?

It is masculine, plural, because the noun to which it refers (die Soldaten) is masculine, plural.

You have probably noticed that the only three forms assumed by the relative pronouns in these sentences are der, die, and das, that is to say, the same forms which the definite article has in the various numbers and genders of the nominative case.

The following table shows this similarity:

NOMINATIVE CASE

Singular

Masculine: Der Mann, der reich ist,

Feminine: Die Frau, die reich ist,

Neuter: Das Mädchen, das reich ist,

Plural
(all genders)

Die Männer (Frauen, Mädchen) die reich sind,

Note, however, that the forms above relate only to relative pronouns in the nominative case. Thus, it is necessary for you to be sure that the relative pronoun is in the nominative case before using one of these forms.

Consider the following example:

Der Soldat, der uns den Weg zeigt, spricht gut Deutsch.

(The soldier who is showing us the way speaks good German.)

Say the subordinate clause in the German sentence above, including the relative pronoun which introduces it.

The subordinate clause is:

der uns den Weg zeigt
(who is showing us the way)

What is the subject of this clause?

Hint: Subjects can be either nouns OR (relative) pronouns.

The subject of the clause is der (or "who," in the English sentence). To verify that der is indeed the subject, you can remember that the clause is saying in effect:

"The soldier is showing us the way,"
(subject) (verb)

substituting the relative pronoun der for der Soldat.

If the relative pronoun in a German subordinate clause is the subject of that clause, it uses the nominative case forms; if it is the direct object, it uses accusative case forms; and if it is an indirect object, it uses, of course, dative case forms.

Now let us turn the page and examine these different contexts in which the relative pronoun would occur.

For each of the following sentences, write NOM, ACC, or DAT on the line provided, depending on whether the relative pronoun is in the nominative, accusative, or dative case. To determine this, mentally substitute the noun to which the relative pronoun refers and figure out whether it serves within the clause as subject, direct object, or indirect object. Do not be concerned about the form of the accusative or dative relative pronouns at this point, but simply identify the case involved.

1. Der Sportwagen, --- vor dem Haus steht, gehört meinem Freund. _____
(The sports car standing in front of the house belongs to my friend.)
2. Die Dame, --- wir unser Haus verkauft haben, kommt aus München. _____
(The lady to whom we sold our house comes from Munich.)
3. Der Hund, --- Sie auf der Strasse sehen, ist sehr alt. _____
(The dog you see in the street is very old.)
4. Soldaten, --- das Spracheninstitut besuchen, lernen gut Deutsch. _____
(Soldiers who attend the Language Institute learn German well.)

5. Das Kind, --- der Ball gehört, läuft über die Strasse. _____
(The child to whom the ball belongs is running across the street.)
6. Die Bücher, --- wir gekauft haben, sind teuer. _____
(The books we bought are expensive.)
7. Die Männer, --- wir geholfen haben, haben uns sehr gedankt. _____
(The men we helped thanked us very much.)
8. Das Kind, --- so schön singt, ist meine Tochter. _____
(The child who is singing so beautifully is my daughter.)
9. Das Kleid, --- Inge gekauft hat, ist elegant. _____
(The dress that Inge bought is elegant.)
10. Der Wein, --- wir trinken, ist nicht zu teuer. _____
(The wine we are drinking is not too expensive.)
11. Sind das die Soldaten, --- du den Weg gezeigt hast? _____
(Are those the soldiers to whom you showed the way?)

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

The correct answers are:

1. NOM

7. DAT

2. DAT

8. NOM

3. ACC

9. ACC

4. NOM

10. ACC

5. DAT

11. DAT

6. ACC

START THE TAPE.

In summary, the proper form of the relative pronoun is found, first, by determining the gender and number of the noun to which the pronoun refers, and second, by identifying the grammatical function of that pronoun within the subordinate clause. For the time being, you will practice only relative pronouns in the nominative case (in all genders, singular and plural). In later exercises, you will learn relative pronouns in the accusative and dative cases, and will finally combine all three forms in general exercises.

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate relative pronoun in the nominative case. If you wish to do so, consult the table of nominative case forms on page 16 before beginning the exercise. You may also want to analyze the subordinate clauses to satisfy yourself that each relative pronoun is the subject of its clause.

1. Kennst du die Dame, _____ ins Auto steigt?
(Do you know the lady who is getting into the car?)
2. Hier kommt der Herr, _____ mit Ihnen sprechen will.
(Here comes the gentleman who wants to speak to you.)
3. Das ist das Auto, _____ nicht mehr fährt.
(That is the car that doesn't run anymore.)
4. Ist das die Schülerin, _____ aus Amerika kommt?
(Is that the student who comes from America?)
5. Die Kinder, _____ der alten Dame helfen, bekommen ein Stück Kuchen.
(The children who help the old lady get a piece of cake.)
6. Das Sofa, _____ im Wohnzimmer steht, ist schon kaputt.
(The sofa that is standing in the living room is already broken.)
7. Die Frau, _____ aus dem Haus kommt, ist meine Mutter.
(The woman coming out of the house is my mother.)
8. Der Hund, _____ über die Strasse läuft, gehört meinem Nachbarn.
(The dog running across the street belongs to my neighbor.)
9. Die Blumen, _____ in diesem Garten wachsen, sind schön.
(The flowers that grow in this garden, are beautiful.)
10. Der Koffer, _____ vor der Tür steht, ist schwer.
(The suitcase that is standing in front of the door is heavy.)
11. Die Schüler, _____ aus der Schule kommen, gehen nach Hause.
(The students coming from school are going home.)

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- | | |
|--------------|---------------|
| _____ 1. die | _____ 7. die |
| _____ 2. der | _____ 8. der |
| _____ 3. das | _____ 9. die |
| _____ 4. die | _____ 10. der |
| _____ 5. die | _____ 11. die |
| _____ 6. das | |

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences, supplying the appropriate nominative form of the relative pronoun.

1. Ist das der Schüler, bei euch wohnt?
(Is that the student who lives at your house?)
2. Das sind die Nachbarn, ihr Haus verkauft haben.
(Those are the neighbors who sold their house.)
3. Der Lehrer, aus dem Klassenzimmer kommt, heisst Schulz.
(The teacher who is coming out of the classroom is Mr. Schulz.)
4. Wann kommt die Dame, sich die Wohnung ansehen will?
(When is the lady coming who wants to look at the apartment?)
5. Die Strassenbahn, sehr langsam fährt, kommt um die Ecke.
(The streetcar which is very slow is coming around the corner.)

6. Bier, zu warm ist, schmeckt nicht gut.
(Beer that is too warm doesn't taste good.)
7. Hörst du das Flugzeug, über die Stadt fliegt?
(Can you hear the plane that is flying over the town?)
8. Die Schüler,.... in diesem Haus wohnen, sind alle Amerikaner.
(The students living in this apartment are all Americans.)
9. Die Freundinnen, mich besuchen wollen, kommen morgen.
(The girl friends who want to visit me are coming tomorrow.)
10. Das ist der Film, mir so gut gefällt.
(That's the movie I like so much.)

So far in this **lesson**, you have learned the forms of the relative pronoun in the nominative case and have identified the case (nominative, accusative, or dative) required by various relative clauses. The question of word order in relative clauses has yet to be discussed.

In **Lesson 23**, you learned a word order rule which applies to subordinate clauses of all types, including relative clauses as well as clauses introduced by subordinating conjunctions. This rule was that, in a subordinate clause, the inflected verb goes to the end of the clause.

Listen to and repeat the following examples, noticing the word order. In all instances, the inflected verb is at the end of the clause; this includes the modal verb in clauses which contain a modal, and the auxiliary verb in clauses using the present perfect tense.

1. Der Herr, der aus dem Restaurant kommt, ist mein Lehrer.
(The gentlemen coming out of the restaurant is my teacher.)
2. Die Schülerin, die uns besuchen will, kommt aus Hamburg.
(The student who wants to visit us comes from Hamburg.)
3. Das Kind, das seinen Vater gesucht hat, geht jetzt nach Hause.
(The child who looked for his father is going home now.)
4. Die Soldaten, die in Urlaub fahren, kaufen Geschenke für ihre Eltern.
(The soldiers who are going on furlough are buying presents for their parents.)
5. Die Dame, die in diesem Haus wohnt, ist sehr reich.
(The lady living in this house is very rich.)
6. Das Auto, das gerade um die Ecke gefahren ist, gehört meinem Lehrer.
(The car that just drove around the corner belongs to my teacher.)

NOTES

Say a single German sentence which combines the two sentences given by means of a relative pronoun. For example:

You see: Ich kaufe Bücher. Sie sind interessant.

You say: Ich kaufe Bücher, die interessant sind.

Be sure to use transposed word order in the relative clause.

1. Wir trinken Wein. Er kommt aus Kalifornien.
2. Ich sehe das Schiff. Es fährt auf dem Fluss.
3. Peter hilft seiner Mutter. Sie ist müde.
4. Sie essen den Kuchen. Er steht auf dem Tisch.
5. Sie setzt sich auf das Sofa. Es steht in der Ecke.
6. Ingrid hört ihre Kinder. Sie spielen auf der Strasse.
7. Sie helfen den Nachbarn. Sie arbeiten im Garten.
8. Er besucht seine Freunde. Sie wohnen in Berlin.
9. Ich danke dem Soldaten. Er trägt meinen Koffer.
10. Die Autos stehen vor dem Hotel. Es ist sehr elegant.

Accusative Case Forms of the Relative Pronouns

The accusative case forms of the relative pronouns are exactly similar to the corresponding forms of the definite article. Listen to and repeat the following sentences, noticing that the form of the relative pronoun in the second sentence of each pair is the same as that of the (accusative case) definite article in the first sentence.

ACCUSATIVE CASE

Singular

- Masculine: Ich sehe den Mann.
 Der Mann, den ich sehe, ist nett.
- Feminine: Ich sehe die Dame.
 Die Dame, die ich sehe, ist nett.
- Neuter: Ich sehe das Kind.
 Das Kind, das ich sehe, ist nett.

Plural
 (all genders)

Ich sehe die Männer (Frauen, Kinder).
 Die Männer (Frauen, Kinder), die ich sehe, sind nett.

Study the above sentences until you feel you know the accusative case forms for all genders of the relative pronoun, singular and plural. Then turn the page for exercises.

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate case form of the relative pronoun. Notice that in each of these sentences, the relative pronoun is the direct object of the relative clause.

1. Hier ist das Geschenk, _____ du gestern gekauft hast.
(Here is the present you bought yesterday.)
2. Das ist ein Film, _____ ihr sehen müsst.
(That is a movie you must see.)
3. Wir lernen neue Wörter, _____ wir aufschreiben.
(We are learning new words which we are writing down.)
4. Hans und Inge kaufen das Auto, _____ sie gestern gesehen haben.
(Hans and Inge are buying the car that they saw yesterday.)
5. Das ist mein Freund, _____ ich in Berlin besuchen möchte.
(That is my friend whom I would like to visit in Berlin.)

6. Die Blumen, _____ du mitgebracht hast, sind schön.
(The flowers you brought along are beautiful.)
7. Hier ist die Milch, _____ du den Kindern geben sollst.
(Here is the milk you are supposed to give to the children.)
8. Der Herr, _____ du gestern gesehen hast, ist Professor Schulz.
(The gentleman you saw yesterday is Professor Schulz.)
9. Sind das die Zeitungen, _____ du gekauft hast?
(Are these the newspapers you bought?)
10. Er isst das Frühstück, _____ er sich gemacht hat.
(He is eating the breakfast he made for himself.)
11. Sind das die Klassenkameraden, _____ du eingeladen hast?
(Are those the classmates whom you invited?)

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

NOTES

243

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- | | |
|--------------|---------------|
| _____ 1. das | _____ 6. die |
| _____ 2. den | _____ 7. die |
| _____ 3. die | _____ 8. den |
| _____ 4. das | _____ 9. die |
| _____ 5. den | _____ 10. das |
| | _____ 11. die |

Say complete German sentences, supplying the appropriate form of the relative pronoun in the accusative case.

1. Hier sind die Bücher, du lesen möchtest.
(Here are the books you would like to read.)
2. Der Arzt, wir angerufen haben, ist sofort gekommen.
(The doctor we called came at once.)
3. Das Fahrrad, ich meinem Sohn gekauft habe, ist schon kaputt.
(The bicycle I bought my son is already wrecked.)
4. Die Dame, du dort siehst, ist meine Deutschlehrerin.
(The lady you see over there is my German teacher.)
5. Die Soldaten, du vor der Kaserne siehst, gehen auf Urlaub.
(The soldiers you see in front of the barracks are going on furlough.)

START THE TAPE.

6. Meine Freundinnen, du kennst, wohnen jetzt in München.
(My friends, whom you know, are living now in Munich.)
7. Das ist ein Film, ich noch nicht gesehen habe.
(That is a movie which I haven't seen yet.)
8. Die Kleider, Ingrid sich gemacht hat, sind hübsch.
(The dresses Ingrid made for herself are pretty.)
9. Sind das die Herren, du gestern abend im Restaurant gesehen hast?
(Are these the gentlemen whom you saw last night in the restaurant?)
10. Der Hund, Hans gekauft hat, ist noch jung.
(The dog Hans bought is still young.)
11. Die Dame, ich um die Adresse gebeten habe, ist sehr alt.
(The lady whom I asked for the address is very old.)

Say a single German sentence which combines the two sentences given by means of a relative pronoun.
For example:

You see: Das ist die Milch. Du willst sie trinken.
You say: Das ist die Milch, die du trinken willst.

Be careful of word order in the relative clause.

1. Das ist die Adresse. Du suchst sie.
2. Das sind unsere Nachbarn. Wir haben sie eingeladen.
3. Hans hat einen neuen Freund. Er möchte ihn bald besuchen.
4. Franz trägt den Anzug. Er hat ihn gestern gekauft.
5. Das ist das Haus. Wir wollen es kaufen.
6. Hier sind die jungen Damen. Wir kennen sie.
7. Dort ist der Herr. Wir haben ihn nach dem Weg gefragt.
8. Das sind die Bilder. Sie müssen sie verkaufen.
9. Das ist meine Freundin. Du kennst sie noch nicht.

The dative case forms of the relative pronouns are the same as the corresponding definite articles, with the single exception that the plural relative pronoun (for all genders) is denen, rather than the definite article form den.

Listen to and repeat the following sentences, noticing the similarity of the dative case definite article and the dative case relative pronoun, except the plural pronoun denen.

DATIVE CASE

Singular

Masculine: Ich gebe dem Mann das Buch.

Der Mann, dem ich das Buch gebe, ist mein Vater.

Feminine: Ich gebe der Frau das Buch.

Die Frau, der ich das Buch gebe, ist meine Mutter.

Neuter: Ich gebe dem Kind das Buch.

Das Kind, dem ich das Buch gebe, ist meine Tochter.

Plural (all genders)

Ich gebe den Männern (Frauen, Kindern) die Bücher.

BUT: Die Männer (Frauen, Kinder), denen ich die Bücher gebe, sind meine Bekannten.

Study the above sentences until you feel you know the dative case relative pronouns thoroughly, then turn the page for written and spoken exercises.

Section 4

Dative Case Forms of the Relative Pronouns

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate dative case relative pronoun.

1. Das ist die Dame, _____ ich mein Sofa verkaufen möchte.
(That is the lady to whom I would like to sell my sofa.)
2. Die Soldaten, _____ wir geholfen haben, sind heute morgen abgefahren.
(The soldiers whom we helped left this morning.)
3. Wo ist der Schüler, _____ die Bücher gehören?
(Where is the student to whom the books belong?)
4. Ist das das Mädchen, _____ du so oft geschrieben hast?
(Is that the girl to whom you wrote so often?)
5. Die Schüler, _____ ich die Bücher geliehen habe, sind schon nach Hause gefahren.
(The students to whom I lent the books have already left for home.)
6. Hans sieht das Kind, _____ er den Ball schenken möchte.
(Hans sees the child to whom he would like to give the ball.)
7. Die Frau, _____ du geholfen hast, ist sehr nett.
(The woman you helped is very nice.)

8. Ist das der Offizier, _____ ihr euer Auto zeigen wollt?

(Is that the officer to whom you would like to show your car?)

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS

NOTES

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

_____ 1. der

_____ 2. denen

_____ 3. dem

_____ 4. dem

_____ 5. denen

_____ 6. dem

_____ 7. der

_____ 8. dem

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences, supplying the appropriate relative pronoun in the dative case.

1. Der Herr, wir aus dem Auto geholfen haben, ist sehr alt.

(The gentleman whom we helped out of the car is very old.)

2. Die Damen, ihr die Wohnung zeigt, sind sehr elegant.

(The ladies to whom you are showing the apartment are very elegant.)

3. Ist das der Offizier, Hans sein Motorrad verkaufen will?

(Is that the officer to whom Hans wants to sell his motorcycle?)

4. Das Kind, du geholfen hast, ist immer noch krank.

(The child whom you helped is still sick.)

5. Die Nachbarn, der Sportwagen gehört, wollen nach Italien fahren.

(The neighbors to whom the sports car belongs want to travel to Italy.)

6. Wo ist die Schülerin, ich mein Fahrrad geliehen habe?
(Where is the student to whom I lent my bicycle?)
7. Die Amerikaner, dieses grosse Haus gehört, verbringen den Winter in Florida.
(The Americans to whom this big house belongs spend the winter in Florida.)
8. Der Soldat, ich den Stadtplan gegeben habe, ist nach Berlin gefahren.
(The soldier to whom I gave the city map has gone to Berlin.)

Say a single German sentence which combines the two sentences given by means of a relative pronoun. Be careful of word order in the relative clause.

1. Wir kennen den Herrn nicht. Wir haben ihm den Weg gezeigt.
2. Hans besucht seine kranke Grossmutter. Er hat ihr Blumen geschickt.
3. Karl ruft die Schülerin an. Er hat ihr ein Buch geliehen.
4. Das ist meine Lehrerin. Ich helfe ihr jeden Tag.
5. Inge ruft ihren Freund an. Sie möchte ihm etwas sagen.
6. Ich besuche meine Freunde. Ich habe ihnen nicht geschrieben.
7. Kennst du den Schüler? Dieser Mantel gehört ihm.

Section 5

Relative Pronouns in All Three Cases

In the preceding three sections, you practiced sentences using relative pronouns in nominative, accusative, and dative cases but (with the exception of one introductory exercise) you were always told which case was to be used. This section contains a number of exercises in which you must figure out the proper case of the relative pronoun in order to arrive at the correct form.

From Section 1, you will remember that the gender and number of the relative pronoun are determined by the noun to which the pronoun refers, while the case of the pronoun depends on its grammatical function within the relative clause. A practical way of identifying the grammatical function of the relative pronoun (until it becomes second nature to you through practice), is to mentally substitute the noun referred to. This approach is summarized below for relative pronouns in all three cases:

NOMINATIVE

Desired sentence:

Der Mann, d-- sich ein Haus baut, ist reich.

(The man who is building himself a house is rich.)

Mental rephrasing of relative clause:

Der Mann baut sich ein Haus.

Conclusion: The substituted noun (and hence the pronoun) is the subject of the clause, and must be used in the nominative case.

ACCUSATIVE

Desired sentence:

Der Sportwagen, d-- der Soldat kauft, ist teuer.

(The sports car that the soldier is buying is expensive.)

Mental rephrasing of relative clause:

Der Soldat kauft den Sportwagen.

Conclusion: The substituted noun is the direct object of the clause, and the corresponding relative pronoun would thus be in the accusative case.

DATIVE

Desired sentence:

Die Dame, d-- wir den Weg zeigen, ist alt.

(The woman to whom we are showing the way is old.)

Mental rephrasing of relative clause:

Wir zeigen der Dame den Weg.

Conclusion: The substituted noun is the indirect object of the clause, and the corresponding relative pronoun would thus be in the dative case form.

Study the summary above until you have a clear idea of the "case identifying procedure," then turn the page for further exercises.

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate form of the relative pronoun. Note that all three cases are used.

1. Das ist der Schüler, _____ ich das Buch geliehen habe.
(That is the student to whom I loaned the book.)
2. Sind das die Nachbarn, _____ der Hund gehört?
(Are those the neighbors to whom the dog belongs?)
3. Wo ist das Kind, _____ dieser Ball gehört?
(Where is the child to whom this ball belongs?)
4. Die Pflanze, _____ du gestern gekauft hast, braucht Wasser.
(The plant you bought yesterday needs water.)
5. Sind das die Schülerinnen, _____ bei Herrn Müller Deutsch lernen?
(Are those the students who are learning German from Mr. Müller?)
6. Wo ist das Buch, _____ du mir mitgebracht hast?
(Where is the book you brought along for me?)
7. Der Kaffee, _____ du trinkst, ist sehr stark.
(The coffee that you are drinking is very strong.)
8. Die Kinder, _____ in dieser Strasse wohnen, sind sehr nett.
(The children who live on this street are very nice.)
9. Das Auto, _____ in der Garage steht, ist kaputt.
(The car that's standing in the garage is out of order.)
10. Die Frau, _____ diese Wohnung gehört, ist nach Italien gefahren.
(The woman who owns this apartment went to Italy.)
11. Der Offizier, _____ wir das Haus zeigen, ist gerade aus Amerika gekommen.
(The officer to whom we are showing the house has just come from America.)
12. Die Dame, _____ gerade aus dem Kaufhaus kommt, ist Frau Müller.
(The lady who is just coming out of the department store is Mrs. Müller.)

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

NOTES

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

_____ 1. dem

_____ 7. den

_____ 2. denen

_____ 8. die

_____ 3. dem

_____ 9. das

_____ 4. die

_____ 10. der

_____ 5. die

_____ 11. dem

_____ 6. das

_____ 12. die

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences, supplying the appropriate form of the relative pronoun.

1. Der Kellner, den Wein einschenkt, spricht gut Englisch.

(The waiter who is pouring the wine speaks English well.)

2. Die Soldaten, Deutsch lernen, arbeiten viel.

(The soldiers who are studying German work hard.)

3. Wer ist die Dame, du die Blumen geschickt hast?

(Who is the lady to whom you sent the flowers?)

4. Das Mädchen, den Soldaten eingeladen hat, kauft etwas zu essen.

(The girl who invited the soldier is buying something to eat.)

5. Das ist der Offizier, der neue Porsche gehört.

(That is the officer who owns the new Porsche.)

6. Kennst du die Frau, jeden Morgen in die Kirche geht?

(Do you know the woman who goes to church every morning?)

7. Das Flugzeug, jetzt landet, kommt aus New York.

(The plane that is now landing comes from New York.)

8. Die Damen, wir die Bilder gezeigt haben, sind sehr reich.

(The ladies to whom we showed the pictures, are very rich.)

9. Der Bekannte, wir zum Essen eingeladen haben, hat viel Geld.

(The friend whom we invited to dinner has a lot of money.)

10. Die Häuser, in dieser Stadt stehen, sind sehr alt.

(The houses that are found in this town are very old.)

11. Die Gabel, du mir gegeben hast, ist schmutzig.

(The fork that you gave me is dirty.)

Say German sentences combining the sentence pairs below by means of the appropriate relative pronoun.

1. Der Soldat spricht mit dem Offizier. Er holt ihn vom Hotel ab.
2. Wir suchen den Hund. Wir wollen ihm Wasser bringen.
3. Das ist die Schülerin. Ich möchte sie zur Party einladen.
4. Das sind die Kinder. Sie haben keine Eltern mehr.
5. Wir besuchen unsere alte Lehrerin. Sie wohnt jetzt in Köln.
6. Wir sehen die Soldaten. Wir haben ihnen geholfen.
7. Das Kind sucht seinen Ball. Er liegt im Garten.
8. Die Dame kauft das Haus. Es ist sehr teuer.
9. Der Mann kennt das Kind. Er hilft ihm oft über die Strasse.
10. Herr Müller hängt die Bilder auf. Er hat sie in München gekauft.
11. Hans gefällt das alte Haus. Es steht neben der Kirche.
12. Herr Meyer hilft einer Dame. Sie trägt schweres Gepäck.

Relative Pronouns II

In **Lesson 24**, you learned that the gender and number of a relative pronoun in German is determined by the gender and number of the noun to which it refers. For example:

Das ist die Frau, die bei meiner Mutter wohnt.

Das ist der Mann, der jeden Tag nach Berlin fährt.

Das ist das Mädchen, das Deutsch spricht.

Das sind die Kinder, die mit uns kommen.

You also learned that the grammatical case of a relative pronoun is determined by the function of the relative pronoun within the relative clause. For example:

Das ist der Mann, der jeden Tag ins Kino geht.
(nominative)

Das ist der Mann, den ich jeden Tag im Kino sehe.
(accusative)

Das ist der Mann, dem ich den Film zeige.
(dative)

In German, as in English, relative pronouns may be preceded by a preposition. In such instances, the gender and number of the relative pronoun are still determined by the noun to which it refers, but its grammatical case is determined by the type of preposition which precedes it.

For example, the preposition zu (to, toward) is one of those which are said to "require the dative." When zu precedes a relative pronoun, that pronoun must use a dative case form:

Das ist der Arzt, zu dem ich gehe.

(That is the doctor to whom I go.)

Für (for) is a preposition which "requires the accusative," and any relative pronoun which follows it must be in the accusative case:

Der Mann, für den ich das Buch mitgebracht habe, ist heute nicht hier.

(The man for whom I brought along the book is not here today.)

You have already learned the forms of the relative pronoun in nominative, accusative, and dative cases, for all genders, singular and plural. Your tasks in this **lesson** will be to review the prepositions which you learned in earlier **lessons**, to identify the case which they require, and to practice using them with relative pronouns in relative clauses.

Section 1

Relative Pronouns

Following "Accusative Only" Prepositions

The following prepositions, which you learned in **Lesson 8**, are used only with the accusative case:

<u>durch</u>	through, by, throughout
<u>für</u>	for
<u>gegen</u>	against, opposed to
<u>ohne</u>	without
<u>um</u>	around, about, at

In **Lesson 24**, you learned the forms for the relative pronoun in the accusative case. These are:

ACCUSATIVE CASE

Singular

Masculine	<u>den</u>
Feminine	<u>die</u>
Neuter	<u>das</u>

Plural

All genders	<u>die</u>
-------------	------------

You will also remember that these relative pronoun forms are exactly the same as the definite article forms in the accusative case.

Say complete German sentences, supplying the appropriate accusative case forms of the relative pronoun. Notice the "accusative only" preposition which introduces the relative clause, as well as the English translation:

1. Das ist der Mann, für der Brief ist.
(That's the man whom the letter is for.)
2. Hier ist das Haus, gegen das Auto gefahren ist.
(Here is the house against which the car crashed.)
3. Wie heisst die Stadt, durch wir gefahren sind?
(What's the name of the town through which we drove?)
4. Peter wartet auf Hans und Inge, ohne er nicht abfahren kann.
(Peter is waiting for Hans and Inge, without whom he can't leave.)
5. Das Haus, um die Kinder laufen, ist sehr alt.
(The house around which the children are running is very old.)
6. Das sind die Schüler, für wir eine Wohnung suchen.
(These are the students for whom we are looking for an apartment.)

7. Der Wald, durch wir gehen, ist dunkel.
(The forest through which we are walking is dark.)
8. Der Tisch, um wir sitzen, ist klein.
(The table around which we are sitting is small.)
9. Gib mir bitte das Buch, ohne ich nicht
meine Hausaufgaben machen kann!
(Please give me the book, without which I can't
do my homework.)

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate accusative case form of the relative pronoun. Notice the "accusative only" prepositions.

1. Das Gebäude, um _____ die Kinder laufen, ist sehr hoch.
(The building around which the children are running is very high.)
2. Herr Meyer hat einen Hund, ohne _____ er nie aus dem Haus geht.
(Mr. Meyer has a dog without which he never leaves the house.)
3. Ich besuche meinen alten Freund, für _____ ich eine gute Flasche Wein gekauft habe.
(I am visiting my friend for whom I bought a good bottle of wine.)
4. Die Stadt, durch _____ wir fahren, ist gross.
(The town we are driving through is big.)

5. Frau Müller zieht ihren warmen Mantel an, ohne _____ sie im Winter nicht auskommen kann.
(Mrs. Müller is putting on her warm coat without which she cannot manage in winter.)
6. Das Buch, um _____ ich Hans bitte, ist nicht im Lesezimmer.
(The book I am asking Hans for is not in the reading room.)
7. Dort drüben ist der Wald, durch _____ ich gern einen Spaziergang mache.
(Over there are the woods through which I like to take a walk.)
8. Ich besuche meine Tante, für _____ ich ein Geschenk mitgebracht habe.
(I am visiting my aunt for whom I brought along a present.)
9. Wir laden unsere Freunde ein, ohne _____ wir nicht gern ausgehen.
(We are inviting our friends without whom we don't like to go out.)

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

_____ 1. das

_____ 6. das

_____ 2. den

_____ 7. den

_____ 3. den

_____ 8. die

_____ 4. die

_____ 9. die

_____ 5. den

START THE TAPE.

Relative PronounsFollowing "Dative Only" Prepositions

As you learned in **Lesson 5**, a number of German prepositions require the use of dative case nouns or pronouns. The most important of these are:

aus - out of

ausser - except, except for

bei - at the home of, with (in the sense of living with)

Franz wohnt bei seinen Eltern.

(Franz is living with his parents.)

at (referring to business locations or professional offices)

Er ist noch beim Arzt.

(He is still at the doctor's.)

mit - with (in situations other than those covered by bei)

Hans arbeitet mit seinem Bruder.

(Hans is working with his brother.)

by (referring to means of transportation)

Professor Müller fährt mit dem Zug nach Berlin.

(Professor Müller is going to Berlin by train.)

nach - after (in a temporal sense)

Nach der Schule geht er nach Hause.

(After school, he goes home.)

to or toward (before place names)

Karl fliegt nach Amerika.

(Karl is flying to America.)

for, about

Er fragt nach dem Buch.

(He is asking about the book.)

seit - since, for (in a temporal sense)

Sie ist seit einer Woche in Hamburg.

(She has been in Hamburg for a week.)

(Note the use of the present tense in the German sentence instead of the past tense construction required in the corresponding English expression.)

von - from

Er kommt von der Bank.

(He is coming from the bank.)

about, of

Sie sprechen von ihm.

(They are talking about him.)

zu - to, toward (before nouns denoting institutions and people)

Inge geht erst zur Post und dann zu ihrer Mutter.

(Inge is going first to the post office and then to her mother's.) **START THE TAPE**

From the preceding **lesson**, you should remember that the dative case forms of the relative pronoun are:

DATIVE CASE

Singular

Masculine	<u>dem</u>
Feminine	<u>der</u>
Neuter	<u>dem</u>

Plural

All genders	<u>denen</u>
-------------	--------------

Except for the plural form, denen, which you will have to remember as an exception, the dative case forms of the relative pronoun are identical with the dative case forms of the definite article.

Say complete German sentences, supplying the appropriate dative case form of the relative pronoun. Notice the "dative only" preposition which introduces the relative clause, as well as the English translation:

- Inge wäscht die Gläser, aus wir getrunken haben.
(Inge is washing the glasses we drank out of.)
- Ich schreibe meiner Mutter, von ich lange nichts gehört habe.
(I'm writing my mother, from whom I haven't heard in a long time.)

- Er besucht Herrn und Frau Müller, bei er lange gewohnt hat.
(He is visiting Mr. and Mrs. Müller, at whose house he lived for a long time.)
- Ja, das ist die Dame, nach du gefragt hast.
(Yes, that is the lady about whom you asked.)
- Paul zeigt auf das Haus, aus der Rauch kommt.
(Paul points to the house from which the smoke is coming.)
- Das ist mein Freund Hans, ausser niemand mitkommt.
(This is my friend Hans, except for whom no one is coming along.)
- Peter wäscht den Teller, von¹ er gegessen hat.
(Peter is washing the plate from which he ate.)
- Das ist das Mädchen, mit Franz heute abend ausgeht.
(That's the girl with whom Franz is going out tonight.)

¹NOTE: Prepositions are never contracted with relative pronouns, as they frequently are with the definite article. Thus, while a German speaker could say: "Peter isst vom Teller" (from the plate) using the contracted form, he must say "... den Teller, von dem (from which) er gegessen hat."

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate dative case form of the relative pronoun. Notice the "dative only" prepositions:

1. Die Bücher, nach _____ Herr Schulz gefragt hat, sind gestern angekommen.
(The books about which Mr. Schulz asked arrived yesterday.)
2. Wir schreiben unseren Eltern, zu _____ wir übers Wochenende fahren.
(We are writing our parents to whom we are going over the weekend.)
3. Hier kommt mein Lehrer, von _____ ich dir so viel geschrieben habe.
(Here comes my teacher about whom I wrote you so much.)
4. Inge sucht Maria, bei _____ sie wohnt.
(Inge is looking for Maria, with whom she is living.)
5. Ich suche Peter, ausser _____ alle hier sind.
(I am looking for Peter, except for whom all are here.)
6. Das Hotel, aus _____ er kommt, ist sehr teuer.
(The hotel in which we like to stay is very expensive.)

7. Das ist der Freund, mit _____ ich gekommen bin.

(That is the friend with whom I came.)

8. Der Schüler ruft die Lehrerin an, bei _____ er sich entschuldigen will.

(The student is calling up the teacher to whom he wants to apologize.)

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

NOTES

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

7. dem

1. denen

8. der

START THE TAPE.

2. denen

NOTES

3. dem

4. der

5. dem

6. dem

Section 3
Relative Pronouns

Following "Dative or Accusative" Prepositions

The following prepositions, first presented in **Lesson 8**, can be followed by nouns or pronouns in either the accusative or the dative case:

<u>an</u>	at, close to, to
<u>auf</u>	on, upon
<u>hinter</u>	behind
<u>in</u>	in, into
<u>neben</u>	next to
<u>über</u>	over, above, about
<u>unter</u>	under, underneath
<u>vor</u>	in front of
<u>zwischen</u>	between

The dative case is used with these prepositions when no motion is implied, or when there is motion with no particular destination.

Die Katze sitzt in dem Garten.

(The cat is sitting in the garden.)

The state of "sitting" does not involve any motion, so the dative case is used after the "either-case" preposition, in.

Die Katze läuft in dem Garten herum.

(The cat runs around in the garden.)

Here, there is the motion of "running," but the sentence indicates that the cat is running around inside the garden, with no particular destination involved. For this reason, the dative case is used.

The accusative case is used when there is motion with a particular destination:

Die Katze läuft in den Garten.

(The cat runs in[to] the garden.)

The implication here is that the cat is running into the garden from some outside point, with the destination being the garden itself. Since there is motion with a particular destination, the accusative case is used.¹

In working with the exercise on the next page, you should remember the following rules:

1. no motion, or motion without a particular destination: DATIVE
2. motion with a particular destination: ACCUSATIVE

¹Additional discussion of the "dative/accusative" distinction is given in **Lesson 8**, which may be consulted if desired.

For each of the following English sentences, write DAT or ACC on the line provided to indicate whether the dative or the accusative case should be used after the preposition in the corresponding German sentence.

The correct answers are:

- | | | |
|---|-------|--------|
| 1. Paul ran <u>in</u> the house when his mother called him. | _____ | 1. ACC |
| 2. A policeman is posted <u>in front of</u> the bank. | _____ | 2. DAT |
| 3. The plane is circling <u>over</u> the airport. | _____ | 3. DAT |
| 4. The fish are swimming <u>in</u> the bowl. | _____ | 4. DAT |
| 5. A child is standing <u>at</u> the window. | _____ | 5. DAT |
| 6. The escaping prisoners crawled <u>under</u> the fence. | _____ | 6. ACC |
| 7. Planes headed for Berlin fly <u>over</u> my house. | _____ | 7. ACC |
| 8. The book is lying <u>on</u> the table. | _____ | 8. DAT |
| 9. I am <u>next to</u> my friend in line. | _____ | 9. DAT |

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences, using the appropriate form of the relative pronoun. Note that the prepositions used require either accusative or dative case pronoun forms, depending on sentence meaning.

1. Siehst du das Fenster, an das Kind steht?
(Do you see the window at which the child is standing?)
2. Kennst du die Stadt, in sie wohnen?
(Do you know the town in which they live?)
3. Der Tisch, unter die Katze sitzt, ist gedeckt.
(The table under which the cat sits is set.)
4. In dieser Strasse gibt es gute Restaurants, in ich gern essen möchte.
(In this street there are some good restaurants in which I would like to eat.)
5. Der Garten, in wir gehen, ist schön.
(The garden into which we are going is beautiful.)
6. Der Herr, hinter ich im Omnibus sitze, raucht eine starke Zigarre.
(The gentleman behind whom I am sitting in the bus is smoking a strong cigar.)
7. Der Fluss, auf diese Schiffe fahren, ist tausend Kilometer lang.
(The river on which these ships travel is a thousand kilometers long.)
8. Die Brücke, über die Soldaten gehen, ist gerade fertig geworden.
(The bridge over which the soldiers are walking has just been completed.)
9. Die Häuser, zwischen der Park liegt, sind sehr alt.
(The houses between which the park is situated are very old.)
10. Die Gebäude, vor die Kinder spielen, sind nicht schön.
(The buildings in front of which the children are playing are not very attractive.)
11. Die Zeitschriften, zwischen ich den Brief gelegt habe, sind nicht mehr hier.
(The magazines between which I put the letter aren't here any more.)
12. Der Herr, neben Franz steht, ist mein Deutschlehrer.
(The gentleman next to whom Franz is standing is my German teacher.)

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate relative pronoun. Note that either the accusative or dative case is required, depending on sentence meaning.

1. Die Wand, an _____ Paul das Bild hängt, ist schmutzig.
(The wall on which Paul is hanging the picture is dirty.)
2. Das Haus, in _____ Sie gehen, gehört Herrn Meyer.
(The house into which you are going belongs to Mr. Meyer.)
3. Siehst du die zwei Herren dort, zwischen _____ Peter steht?
(Do you see the two gentlemen between whom Peter is standing?)
4. Ist das der Tisch, auf _____ ich das Buch legen soll?
(Is that the table on which I'm supposed to put the book?)
5. Die Strassen, auf _____ wir gehen, sind neu.
(The streets on which we are walking are new.)
6. Hier gibt es nur zwei Kinos, in _____ man gute Filme sehen kann.
(There are only two movie theaters here in which one can see good movies.)

7. Die Tür, vor _____ das Kind steht, ist zu.
(The door in front of which the child is standing is closed.)
8. Der Tisch, unter _____ der Ball rollt, ist kaputt.
(The table under which the ball is rolling is broken.)
9. Das Sofa, hinter _____ die Katze liegt, ist im Wohnzimmer.
(The sofa behind which the cat is lying is in the living room.)
10. Hier ist ein Stuhl, auf _____ du deinen Mantel legen kannst.
(Here is a chair on which you can lay your coat.)

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

_____ 1. die

_____ 2. das

_____ 3. denen

_____ 4. den

_____ 5. denen

_____ 6. denen

_____ 7. der

_____ 8. den

_____ 9. dem

_____ 10. den

START THE TAPE.

Section 4
Relative Pronouns

Following Prepositions of All Types

In this section, you will deal with exercises in which "accusative only," "dative only," and "either case" prepositions are combined. By way of review, study the three lists below before beginning the exercises which follow.

"Accusative Only" Prepositions

<u>durch</u>	through, by, throughout
<u>für</u>	for
<u>gegen</u>	against, opposed to
<u>ohne</u>	without
<u>um</u>	around, about, at

"Either Case" Prepositions

<u>an</u>	at, close to, to
<u>auf</u>	on, upon
<u>hinter</u>	behind
<u>in</u>	in, into
<u>neben</u>	next to
<u>über</u>	over, above, about
<u>unter</u>	under, underneath
<u>vor</u>	in front of
<u>zwischen</u>	between

START THE TAPE.

"Dative Only" Prepositions

<u>aus</u>	out of
<u>ausser</u>	except, except for
<u>bei</u>	at the home of, with (in the sense of living with)
	at (referring to business locations or professional offices)
<u>mit</u>	with
<u>nach</u>	after (temporal sense) to, toward (before place names)
<u>seit</u>	since, for (temporal sense)
<u>von</u>	from, about, of
<u>zu</u>	to, toward (before nouns denoting institutions and people)

TURN THE PAGE.

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate form of the relative pronoun, using the accusative or dative case depending on the type of preposition or, for "either case" prepositions, the sentence meaning.

1. Der Herr, mit _____ du mich gestern gesehen hast, ist Professor Schulz.
(The gentleman with whom you saw me yesterday is Professor Schulz.)
2. Wie heisst die Dame, für _____ Sie den Brief abholen wollen?
(What is the name of the lady for whom you want to pick up the letter?)
3. Die Tafel, an _____ die Kinder schreiben, ist schmutzig.
(The blackboard on which the children are writing is dirty.)
4. Das Haus, gegen _____ der Sportwagen gefahren ist, gehört unserem Lehrer.
(The house against which the sports car crashed belongs to our teacher.)
5. Die Autos, hinter _____ wir fahren, sind sehr langsam.
(The cars behind which we are driving are very slow.)
6. Ist das die Dame, von _____ du das Geschenk bekommen hast?
(Is that the lady from whom you got the present?)
7. Sind das die zwei Schülerinnen, zwischen _____ er immer sitzt?
(Are those the two students between whom he always sits?)
8. Herr Müller wartet auf seine Kinder, ohne _____ er nicht abfahren will.
(Mr. Müller is waiting for his children without whom he won't leave.)
9. Der Koffer, unter _____ die Zeitungen liegen, ist sehr schwer.
(The suitcase under which the newspapers are lying is very heavy.)
10. Die Wälder, durch _____ die Soldaten gehen, sind dunkel.
(The forests through which the soldiers are walking are dark.)

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

NOTES

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

_____ 1. dem

_____ 2. die

_____ 3. die

_____ 4. das

_____ 5. denen

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

_____ 6. der

_____ 7. denen

_____ 8. die

_____ 9. dem

_____ 10. die

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences, supplying the appropriate form of the relative pronoun. Note that either accusative or dative forms are required, depending on the preposition or on sentence meaning.

1. Die Stühle, auf sie gesessen haben, sind jetzt kaputt.
(The chairs on which they sat are now broken.)
2. Die Dame, bei Ingrid wohnt, ist Lehrerin.
(The lady with whom Ingrid is living is a teacher.)
3. Der Koffer, in wir die Geschenke legen, ist zu klein.
(The suitcase into which we are putting the presents is too small.)
4. Siehst du die Ecke, um das Auto fährt?
(Do you see the corner around which [where] the car is turning?)
5. Der Arzt, zu ich gehe, ist sehr gut.
(The doctor to whom I am going is very good.)

6. Die Stadt, nach Sie mich fragen, hat viele alte Kirchen.

(The city about which you are asking me has many old churches.)

7. Das Haus, vor der Mercedes steht, gefällt mir gut.
(I like the house in front of which the Mercedes is parked.)

8. Das Land, aus er kommt, ist sehr arm.
(The country from which he comes is very poor.)

9. Der Rhein, über wir geflogen sind, ist ein grosser Fluss.

(The Rhine, across which we flew, is a big river.)

NOTES

So far in this **lesson**, you have not been required to deal with word order in relative clauses introduced by a preposition. This poses no real problem, since, except for the fact that a preposition now precedes the relative pronoun, the word order within the relative clause is the same as you learned in **Lesson 24**. Specifically, the inflected verb is placed at the end of the clause, with the rest of the clause following the usual patterns for simple constructions, reflexive constructions, modal auxiliaries, etc., as the case may be.

Listen to and repeat the following examples, paying careful attention to word order, including the placement of the underlined inflected verb.

1. Das ist der Schüler, mit dem ich ins Kino gehe.

(That is the student with whom I'm going to the movies.)

2. Ist das der Sportwagen, für den er sich

interessiert?

(Is that the sports car in which he is interested?)

3. Herr Müller wartet auf seine Frau, ohne die er nie ausgeht.

(Mr. Müller is waiting for his wife, without whom he never goes out.)

4. Hier ist die Brücke, über die er fahren muss.
(Here is the bridge across which he has to drive.)

5. Die Kirche, hinter der Peter sein Auto geparkt hat, ist sehr alt.

(The church behind which Peter parked his car is very old.)

NOTES

Complete the German sentences on the basis of the given English. Use the verbs shown in parentheses.

1. Do you see the house against which the sports car crashed? (fahren)

Siehst du das Haus, gegen _____
_____?

2. That is Professor Schulz, with whom I want to talk. (wollen - sprechen)

Das ist Professor Schulz, mit _____
_____.

3. The soldier is writing a friend from whom he hasn't heard for a long time. (hören)

Der Soldat schreibt einer Freundin, von _____
_____.

4. Here comes that nice lady for whom the officer bought flowers. (kaufen)

Hier kommt die nette Dame, für _____
_____.

5. Give me the piece of paper on which he wrote the address. (schreiben)

Gib mir das Stück Papier, auf _____
_____!

6. The countries across which we are flying are very beautiful. (fliegen)

Die Länder, über _____
_____.

7. The hotel in which we stayed is very elegant. (wohnen)

Das Hotel, in _____
_____.

8. Where is the gentleman with whom we are supposed to meet?

Wo ist der Herr, mit _____
_____?

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

1. das der Sportwagen gefahren ist

2. dem ich sprechen will

3. der er lange nichts gehört hat

4. die der Offizier Blumen gekauft hat

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

5. das er die Adresse geschrieben hat

6. die wir fliegen, sind sehr schön

7. dem wir gewohnt haben, ist sehr elegant

8. dem wir uns treffen sollen

START THE TAPE.

Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs

In this **lesson**, you will learn to "compare" German adjectives and adverbs, that is, to form and use the comparative and superlative forms of both types of words. The **lesson** is divided into the following sections:

1. Comparison of Adjectives
2. Comparative and Superlative of Predicate Adjectives
3. Comparative and Superlative of Descriptive Adjectives
4. Comparison of Adverbs

Section 1

Comparison of Adjectives

In **lessons 16** and 15, you learned the forms and uses of German adjectives in sentences such as:

Seine Frau ist jung.

(His wife is young.)

Ich werde müde.

(I am getting tired.)

Das Wetter bleibt schön.

(The weather stays nice.)

As you may recall, the adjectives in the above sentences are being used as predicate adjectives, in that they follow a verb of being, becoming, or remaining (sein, werden, bleiben). Whenever an adjective is used in a predicate adjective construction, it retains its "dictionary" ("citation") form, which never changes regardless of the gender, number, or case of the noun to which it refers.

All of the adjectives used in **Lessons 16** and 15 were in the so-called "positive" form. For German adjectives (as for English adjectives), there are two other possible forms, which in grammatical terminology are called the "comparative" and the "superlative." You are already thoroughly familiar with these distinctions in English, even though you may not have encountered the formal terminology. Here are some English examples:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
nice	nicer	nicest
big	bigger	biggest
long	longer	longest

For each of the following English adjectives, write POSITIVE, COMPARATIVE, or SUPERLATIVE on the line provided, to indicate the form in which that adjective appears:

- younger _____
- old _____
- tallest _____
- finer _____
- loveliest _____
- better _____

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

The correct answers are:

COMPARATIVE

POSITIVE

SUPERLATIVE

COMPARATIVE

SUPERLATIVE

COMPARATIVE

START THE TAPE.

As you will note from the preceding examples, the comparative and superlative forms of English adjectives (except for irregular forms such as "good," "better," "best") are formed by adding certain endings to the positive form of the adjective. These endings are -er for the comparative and -est for the superlative. Thus, the three forms of the English adjective "rich" are:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
rich	rich <u>er</u>	rich <u>est</u>

Some English adjectives show minor departures from this general rule. For example, adjectives whose positive form already ends in -e add only -r in the comparative and -st in the superlative:

fine	fin <u>er</u>	fin <u>est</u>
------	---------------	----------------

You are not expected to memorize adjective formation rules in English, but simply to realize from the foregoing discussion that there are three general categories:

1. regular adjectives, which follow a single formation rule (long, longer, longest)
2. adjectives which show slight orthographic departures from the "regular" pattern, but which are otherwise regular (nice, nicer, nicest).
3. irregular adjectives, whose comparative and superlative forms are completely different from that of the positive (good, better, best)

An analogous situation exists for German adjectives. Some are irregular, as for example:

gut, besser, best- (good, better, best)

some are completely regular (although the endings are not exactly those of English):

klein, kleiner, kleinst- (small, smaller, smallest)

billig, billiger, billigst- (cheap, cheaper, cheapest)

and some show slight departures from regularity, including adjectives whose positive form ends in -e, -d, -t, or -s, and adjectives which change their stem vowel in the comparative and superlative:

böse, böser, bösest- (angry, angrier, angriest)

kalt, kälter, kältest- (cold, colder, coldest)

or exhibit certain other changes which you will practice in the course of this module.

Let us consider first those German adjectives whose comparative and superlative forms are completely regular. Study the adjectives below, then say the endings which are added to the comparative and the superlative form of regular German adjectives:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
freundlich	freundlicher	freundlichst-
schmutzig	schmutziger	schmutzigst-

The comparative form of regular German adjectives adds -er to the positive form, and the superlative adds -st to the positive.

NOTES

Write the comparative and superlative forms of the following adjectives on the lines provided. All are completely regular.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
1. sauber	_____	_____
2. reich	_____	_____
3. neu	_____	_____
4. schön	_____	_____
5. freundlich	_____	_____
6. schmutzig	_____	_____

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

START THE TAPE.

Listen to the positive form of each of the regular adjectives below, then say the positive, comparative, and superlative forms aloud. For example:

You see and hear: sauber

You say: sauber, sauberer, sauberst-,

You hear (as confirmation): sauber, sauberer, sauberst-.

Compare your pronunciation carefully to that of the German voice.

1. sauber

2. reich

3. neu

4. schön

5. freundlich

6. schmutzig

NOTES

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

1. _____ sauberer _____ sauberst-
2. _____ reicher _____ reichst-
3. _____ neuer _____ neust-¹
4. _____ schöner _____ schönst-
5. _____ freundlicher _____ freundlichst-
6. _____ schmutziger _____ schmutzigst-

¹Sometimes spelled neuest-. We will only use neust- in this module.

START THE TAPE.

Listen to the positive form of each of the regular adjectives below, then say the positive, comparative, and superlative forms aloud. For example:

You see and hear: sauber

You say: sauber, sauberer, sauberst-,

You hear (as confirmation): sauber, sauberer, sauberst-.

Compare your pronunciation carefully to that of the German voice.

1. sauber
2. reich
3. neu
4. schön
5. freundlich
6. schmutzig

Various other irregularities:

dunkel	dunkler	dunkelst-
teuer	teurer	teuerst-
sauer (sour)	saurer	sauerst-

NOTE: The three adjectives above drop an -e- from the positive form to produce the comparative. Otherwise, they are completely regular.

hoch	höher	höchst-
------	-------	---------

NOTE: This adjective drops a -c- in the comparative (only) and changes its stem vowel in the comparative and superlative.

gross	grösser	grösst-
-------	---------	---------

Study all the irregular adjective forms above until you feel you know the positive, comparative, and superlative forms thoroughly, then turn the page for written and spoken exercises on them.

Write the comparative and superlative forms of the adjectives on the lines provided.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
1. hoch	_____	_____
2. müde	_____	_____
3. jung	_____	_____
4. gut	_____	_____
5. warm	_____	_____
6. gross	_____	_____
7. dunkel	_____	_____
8. arm	_____	_____
9. kalt	_____	_____
10. sauer	_____	_____
11. alt	_____	_____
12. böse	_____	_____
13. lang	_____	_____
14. interessant	_____	_____
15. kurz	_____	_____
16. teuer	_____	_____

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- | | |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. _____ höher | _____ höchst- |
| 2. _____ müder | _____ müdest- |
| 3. _____ jünger | _____ jüngst- |
| 4. _____ besser | _____ best- |
| 5. _____ wärmer | _____ wärmst- |
| 6. _____ grösser | _____ grösst- |
| 7. _____ dunkler | _____ dunkelst- |
| 8. _____ ärmer | _____ ärmst- |
| 9. _____ kälter | _____ kältest- |
| 10. _____ saurer | _____ sauerst- |
| 11. _____ älter | _____ ältest- |
| 12. _____ böser | _____ bösest- |
| 13. _____ länger | _____ längst- |
| 14. _____ interessanter | _____ interessantest- |
| 15. _____ kürzer | _____ kürzest- |
| 16. _____ teurer | _____ teuerst- |

START THE TAPE.

Listen to the positive form of each of the adjectives below, then say the positive, comparative, and superlative forms aloud. For example:

You see and hear: gross

You say: gross, grösser, grösst-

You hear (as confirmation): gross, grösser, grösst-.

1. sauer
2. jung
3. teuer
4. lang
5. arm
6. gut
7. böse
8. dunkel
9. hoch
10. interessant
11. warm
12. kalt
13. kurz
14. müde
15. alt

The next exercise combines both regular and irregular forms. Write the comparative and superlative forms on the lines provided:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
1. sauber	_____	_____
2. gut	_____	_____
3. interessant	_____	_____
4. jung	_____	_____
5. neu	_____	_____
6. gross	_____	_____
7. krank	_____	_____
8. dunkel	_____	_____
9. böse	_____	_____
10. teuer	_____	_____
11. freundlich	_____	_____
12. schmutzig	_____	_____
13. alt	_____	_____

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
14. nett	_____	_____
15. müde	_____	_____
16. lang	_____	_____
17. schön	_____	_____
18. kurz	_____	_____
19. warm	_____	_____
20. hoch	_____	_____
21. sauer	_____	_____
22. arm	_____	_____
23. kalt	_____	_____
24. reich	_____	_____

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- | | | |
|-----|---------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. | _____ sauberer | _____ sauberst- |
| 2. | _____ besser | _____ best- |
| 3. | _____ interessanter | _____ interessantest- |
| 4. | _____ jünger | _____ jüngst- |
| 5. | _____ neuer | _____ neust- |
| 6. | _____ grösser | _____ grösst- |
| 7. | _____ kränker | _____ kränkst- |
| 8. | _____ dunkler | _____ dunkelst- |
| 9. | _____ böser | _____ bösest- |
| 10. | _____ teurer | _____ teuerst- |
| 11. | _____ freundlicher | _____ freundlichst- |
| 12. | _____ schmutziger | _____ schmutzigst- |
| 13. | _____ älter | _____ ältest- |

TURN THE PAGE.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- | | | |
|-----|---------------|----------------|
| 14. | _____ netter | _____ nettest- |
| 15. | _____ müder | _____ müdest- |
| 16. | _____ länger | _____ längst- |
| 17. | _____ schöner | _____ schönst- |
| 18. | _____ kürzer | _____ kürzest- |
| 19. | _____ wärmer | _____ wärmst- |
| 20. | _____ höher | _____ höchst- |
| 21. | _____ saurer | _____ sauerst- |
| 22. | _____ ärmer | _____ ärmst- |
| 23. | _____ kälter | _____ kältest- |
| 24. | _____ reicher | _____ reichst- |

START THE TAPE.

NOTES

Section 2

Comparative and Superlative of Predicate Adjectives

As mentioned at the beginning of the lesson, adjectives used in a predicate adjective construction are invariable, that is to say, they do not change their form, regardless of the gender or number of the noun to which they refer. This applies to comparative and superlative forms, as well as to the positive form of any adjective. We will first practice using comparative forms in predicate adjective constructions, and will then study the superlative.

Say the German for "Munich is big," using the adjective gross.

Keeping in mind that gender and number endings are not used with predicate adjectives, regardless of whether they are in positive, comparative, or superlative forms, say complete German sentences on the basis of the English.

1. This wine is cheap, but that wine is cheaper.
Dieser Wein ist billig, aber jener Wein ist
2. This apartment is cheap, but that apartment is cheaper.
Diese Wohnung ist billig, aber jene Wohnung ist
3. This beer is cheap, but that beer is cheaper.
Dieses Bier ist billig, aber jenes Bier ist
4. These books are cheap, but those books are cheaper.
Diese Bücher sind billig, aber jene Bücher ,
sind

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate comparative form of the adjective. Note that both regular and irregular adjectives are used.

1. Berlin ist schön, aber München ist _____.
2. Herr Meyer ist freundlich, aber seine Frau ist _____.
3. Ein Mercedes ist teuer, aber ein Rolls Royce ist _____.
4. Inge ist jung, aber Maria ist _____.
5. Professor Schulz ist nett, aber Professor Meyer ist _____.
6. In Kalifornien ist es warm, aber in Florida ist es _____.
7. Unser Nachbar ist sehr reich, aber Herr Rockefeller ist _____.
8. Dieser Fluss ist lang, aber der Mississippi ist _____.
9. Peters Auto ist schmutzig, aber Karls Sportwagen ist _____.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

START THE TAPE.

Say the German, supplying the appropriate comparative form of the adjective.

1. Meine Wohnung ist sauber, aber seine ist
2. Deine Schuhe sind schmutzig, aber unsere sind
3. Herr Meyer ist alt, aber seine Frau ist
4. Mein Kleid ist schön, aber ihr Kleid ist
5. Euer Hund ist jung, aber unsere Katze ist

NOTES

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

_____ 1. schöner

_____ 2. freundlicher

_____ 3. teurer

_____ 4. jünger

_____ 5. netter

_____ 6. wärmer

_____ 7. reicher

_____ 8. länger

_____ 9. schmutziger

As the grammatical term would lead you to expect, the most common use of the comparative form of adjectives, in both English and German, is to express some inequality between two elements appearing in the sentence. For example:

Peter ist grösser als Hans.

(Peter is taller than Hans.)

Gestern war es kälter als heute.

(Yesterday it was colder than today.)

In sentences of this type, the word als corresponds to the English "than".

In sentences which express equality between two elements (thus using the positive form), the German expression

so + adjective + wie

corresponds to the English "as + adjective + as".
For example:

Peter ist so gross wie Hans.

(Peter is as tall as Hans.)

Instead of using a comparative adjective form to express inequality it is possible to convey the same information by using a positive form together with a negative expression such as nicht. For example:

Hans ist nicht so gross wie Peter.

(Hans ist not as tall as Peter.)

In summary:

Wein ist teurer als Bier.

(Wine is more expensive than beer.)

Wein ist so teuer wie Bier.

(Wine is as expensive as beer.)

Bier ist nicht so teuer wie Wein.

(Beer is not as expensive as wine.)

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate predicate adjective form (positive or comparative) together with any other necessary sentence elements, on the basis of the given English.

1. His suit is not as expensive as my coat. (teuer)

Sein Anzug ist nicht _____
mein Mantel.

2. Munich is older than New York. (alt)

München ist _____ New York.

3. Professor Schulz is as nice as Professor Meyer.
(nett)

Professor Schulz ist _____
Professor Meyer.

4. Mrs. Schmitt is not as rich as Mrs. Lange. (reich)

Frau Schmitt ist _____
Frau Lange.

5. Inge is smaller than Maria. (klein)

Inge ist _____ Maria.

6. This town is as interesting as Cologne.
(interessant)

Diese Stadt ist _____ Köln.

7. My Volkswagen is newer than his Mercedes. (neu)

Mein Volkswagen ist _____
sein Mercedes.

8. The food in this restaurant is better than in
that hotel. (gut)

Das Essen in diesem Restaurant ist _____
in jenem Hotel.

9. The cathedral of Cologne is taller than the
cathedral of Frankfurt. (hoch)

Der Kölner Dom ist _____ der Dom
in Frankfurt.

10. Today it is as warm as yesterday. (warm)

Heute ist es _____ gestern.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

_____ 1. so teuer wie

_____ 2. älter als

_____ 3. so nett wie

_____ 4. nicht so reich wie

_____ 5. kleiner als

_____ 6. so interessant wie

_____ 7. neuer als

_____ 8. besser als

_____ 9. höher als

_____ 10. so warm wie

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences, supplying the appropriate adjective form (positive or comparative) together with any other necessary sentence elements, on the basis of the given English.

1. Maria is younger than Karla. (jung)
Maria ist Karla.
2. His book is not as thick as this one. (dick)
Sein Buch ist nicht dieses.
3. In Italy the weather is better than in Germany. (gut)
In Italien ist das Wetter in Deutschland.
4. These old houses are more beautiful* than the new houses. (schön)
Diese alten Häuser sind die neuen Häuser.
5. This wine is not as sour as the wine you bought yesterday. (sauer)
Dieser Wein ist nicht der Wein, den du gestern gekauft hast.
6. This newspaper is more interesting than that magazine. (interessant)
Diese Zeitung ist jene Zeitschrift.
7. Our dog is always dirtier than our cat. (schmutzig)
Unser Hund ist immer unsere Katze.
8. Karl is older than his sister. (alt)
Karl ist seine Schwester.

9. The beer is not as cold as the wine. (kalt)
Das Bier ist nicht der Wein.
10. The Mississippi is longer than the Rhine. (lang)
Der Mississippi ist der Rhein.

*Note that German does not use the equivalent of more (and most) as an adjective or adverb modifier in Comparison constructions.

We will now consider the superlative form of the predicate adjective. As is true of predicate adjectives generally, the superlative form remains the same regardless of the gender or number of the noun to which it refers. However, in the superlative, the single, invariable ending -en is added to the base form, and in addition, the adjective is preceded by the word am. For example, let us examine the German equivalent of:

My house is biggest.

The base form of the superlative of the adjective gross is grösst-, so you would add -en to this form and also precede the adjective by the word am:

Mein Haus ist am grössten.

How would you say:

His house is smallest

using the superlative form of the adjective klein?

You would say:

Sein Haus ist am kleinsten.

NOTES

that is to say, you would take the base superlative form kleinst-, precede it by am, and add the ending -en.

For each of the following base superlative forms, say the superlative form as it would be used in a predicate adjective construction. For example:

You see: best-

You say: am besten

1. sauberst-
2. interessantest-
3. müdest-
4. kältest-
5. reichst-
6. teuerst-
7. höchst-
8. dunkelst-

For each of the following positive forms, write the superlative form as it would be used in predicate adjective constructions.

1. freundlich _____
2. kalt _____
3. warm _____
4. schön _____
5. schmutzig _____
6. krank _____
7. lang _____
8. böse _____
9. sauer _____
10. gross _____
11. teuer _____
12. sauber _____
13. nett _____
14. neu _____
15. reich _____
16. alt _____
17. arm _____
18. müde _____

19. gut _____
20. hoch _____
21. jung _____
22. kurz _____
23. interessant _____

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate superlative form, using the adjective in parentheses.

1. Alle diese Mäntel sind zwar schön und warm, aber der Mantel da ist _____. (billig)
2. Von allen meinen Schülern ist Franz _____. (intelligent)
3. Deutschland hat viele alte Städte, aber ich glaube, Trier ist _____. (alt)
4. Ich reise gern, aber zu Hause ist es doch _____. (schön)
5. Von allen grossen Städten ist Paris _____. (interessant)
6. Mutter, bei dir ist es doch immer _____. (nett)

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. am freundlichsten
- _____ 2. am kältesten
- _____ 3. am wärmsten
- _____ 4. am schönsten
- _____ 5. am schmutzigsten
- _____ 6. am kränksten
- _____ 7. am längsten
- _____ 8. am bösesten
- _____ 9. am sauersten
- _____ 10. am grössten
- _____ 11. am teuersten
- _____ 12. am saubersten
- _____ 13. am nettesten
- _____ 14. am neusten
- _____ 15. am reichsten
- _____ 16. am ältesten
- _____ 17. am ärmsten
- _____ 18. am müdesten

- _____ 19. am besten
- _____ 20. am höchsten
- _____ 21. am jüngsten
- _____ 22. am kürzesten
- _____ 23. am interessantesten

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. am billigsten
- _____ 2. am intelligentesten
- _____ 3. am ältesten
- _____ 4. am schönsten
- _____ 5. am interessantesten
- _____ 6. am nettesten

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

The following exercise combines all the forms studied in this section. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate positive, comparative or superlative form of the predicate adjective on the basis of the given English, adding any other sentence elements required.

1. Hans is younger than Paul. (jung)

Hans ist _____ Paul.

2. Mr. Meyer is not as rich as Mr. Rockefeller. (reich)

Herr Meyer ist nicht _____

Herr Rockefeller.

3. This wine is the most expensive.* (teuer)

Dieser Wein ist _____.

4. Today it is colder than yesterday. (kalt)

Heute ist es _____ gestern.

5. Mr. Müller is friendlier than his wife. (freundlich)

Herr Müller ist _____ seine

Frau.

6. Our children are cleanest in the mornings. (sauber)

Unsere Kinder sind morgens _____.

7. Peter is not as old as Karl. (alt)

Peter ist nicht _____ Karl.

8. In July it is warmer than in April. (warm)

Im Juli ist es _____ im April.

9. In Germany the sky is not as blue as in California. (blau)

In Deutschland ist der Himmel nicht _____

_____ in Kalifornien.

10. Their apples are sourer than ours. (sauer)

Ihre Äpfel sind _____ unsere.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

NOTES

*Note that German does not use the equivalent of most (and more) as an adjective or adverb modifier in Comparison constructions.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. jünger als
- _____ 2. so reich wie
- _____ 3. am teuersten
- _____ 4. kälter als
- _____ 5. freundlicher als
- _____ 6. am saubersten
- _____ 7. so alt wie
- _____ 8. wärmer als

_____ 9. so blau wie

_____ 10. saurer als

START THE TAPE.

Say the German, filling in the blanks with the appropriate positive, comparative, or superlative form of the predicate adjective on the basis of the given English. Use the adjectives given in parentheses.

1. In New York the buildings are taller than in Berlin. (hoch)
In New York sind die Gebäude als in Berlin.
2. Mrs. Meyer is not as old as Mrs. Müller. (alt)
Frau Meyer ist nicht Frau Müller.
3. In December the days are shortest. (kurz)
Im Dezember sind die Tage
4. Your living room is darker than your kitchen. (dunkel)
Euer Wohnzimmer ist eure Küche.
5. The second movie is more interesting than the first movie. (interessant)
Der zweite Film ist der erste Film.
6. Hans is not as tired as Inge. (müde)
Hans ist nicht Inge.

Comparative and Superlative of Descriptive Adjectives

In the preceding section, you learned the comparative and superlative "base" forms of a number of adjectives and used them in predicate adjective constructions. In the case of the superlative, you learned the am/-en formula which is added to the base form in these constructions. In no case was it necessary to add special endings to reflect the gender, case, or number of the noun.

In this section, you will practice the use of comparative and superlative adjectives when they precede the noun. As you will recall from **Lessons 16** and **15**, adjectives preceding a noun must use certain endings appropriate to the gender, case, and number of the noun to which they refer. In some instances, different endings are used, depending on whether a "der" word or a "kein" word precedes the adjective.

The same system of endings applies to adjectives in the comparative and superlative forms, the only difference being that these endings are added to the base form of the comparative or the superlative, rather than to the positive base form which you studied in **Lessons 16** and **15**. Thus, when using a comparative or superlative adjective form you must first remember the base form (comparative or superlative) of that adjective and then add the proper gender, case, and number ending.

For example, suppose you wanted to say the German equivalent of:

Mr. Meyer is buying a bigger house.

You would first determine the base comparative form of gross. What is this form?

The base form of the comparative of gross is grösser, to which you would add the proper ending, -es (neuter, singular, accusative; adjective preceded by a "kein" word):

Herr Meyer kauft ein grösseres Haus.

As another example, consider the German equivalent of:

The cheapest wine comes from California.

What is the base form of the superlative of billig?

The base form of the superlative is billigst-, to which you would add the proper ending, -e (masculine, singular, nominative):

Der billigste Wein kommt aus Kalifornien.

Fill in the appropriate comparative form of the adjective on the basis of the positive form given below.

1. Hans kauft einen teuren Sportwagen.

Hans kauft einen _____ Sportwagen.

2. Die saubere Wohnung gefällt mir besser.

Die _____ Wohnung gefällt mir besser.

3. Wir helfen den armen Frauen gern.

Wir helfen den _____ Frauen gern.

4. Fährst du mit dem grossen Auto?

Fährst du mit dem _____ Auto?

5. Die Mutter legt das kleine Kind aufs Sofa.

Die Mutter legt das _____ Kind aufs Sofa.

6. Ich möchte einen warmen Mantel kaufen.

Ich möchte einen _____ Mantel kaufen.

7. Wir gehen nie durch die dunklen Strassen.

Wir gehen nie durch die _____ Strassen.

8. Einen hohen Berg habe ich noch nie gesehen.

Einen _____ Berg habe ich noch nie gesehen.

9. Nächstes Mal bestellen wir einen guten Wein.

Nächstes Mal bestellen wir einen _____ Wein.

10. Die schmutzigen Kleider müssen wir noch einmal waschen.

Die _____ Kleider müssen wir noch einmal waschen.

11. Die reichen Amerikaner verbringen den Winter in Florida.

Die _____ Amerikaner verbringen den Winter in Florida.

12. Die jungen Hunde spielen gern im Garten.

Die _____ Hunde spielen gern im Garten.

13. Die neuen Wohnungen haben alle warmes und kaltes Wasser.

Die _____ Wohnungen haben alle warmes und kaltes Wasser.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. teureren
- _____ 2. sauberere
- _____ 3. ärmeren
- _____ 4. grösseren
- _____ 5. kleinere
- _____ 6. wärmeren
- _____ 7. dunkleren
- _____ 8. höheren
- _____ 9. besseren

_____ 10. schmutzigeren

_____ 11. reicheren

_____ 12. jüngerer

_____ 13. neueren

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences, supplying the appropriate comparative form of the adjective on the basis of the positive form given in the sentences below.

1. Ich helfe der alten Dame über die Strasse.
Ich helfe der Dame über die Strasse.
2. Wir zeigen dem Soldaten einen kurzen Weg.
Wir zeigen dem Soldaten einen Weg.
3. Herr Müller möchte gern ein grosses Haus kaufen.
Herr Müller möchte gern ein Haus kaufen.
4. Zeigen Sie mir bitte die billigen Anzüge!
Zeigen Sie mir bitte die Anzüge!
5. Karl geht heute mit einer netten Schülerin ins Kino.
Karl geht heute mit einer Schülerin ins Kino.
6. Die billigen Äpfel kann man nicht essen.
Die Äpfel kann man nicht essen.
7. Haben Sie kein interessantes Buch für mich?
Haben Sie kein Buch für mich?
8. Den freundlichen Leuten helfen wir gern.
Den Leuten helfen wir gern.
9. Der lange Brief ist von meinen Eltern.
Der Brief ist von meinen Eltern.

10. Die kleinen Kinder dürfen im Garten spielen.

Die Kinder dürfen im Garten spielen.

11. Gib mir das saubere Glas!

Gib mir das Glas!

12. Herr Müller will den alten Volkswagen verkaufen.

Herr Müller will den Volkswagen verkaufen.

NOTES

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate superlative form of the adjective on the basis of the positive form shown. For example:

You see: Hans kauft sich das teure Auto.

You write: Hans kauft sich das teuerste Auto.

1. Herr Müller trinkt immer den billigen Wein.

Herr Müller trinkt immer den _____ Wein.

2. Frau Schulz geht mit ihrer jungen Tochter zum Arzt.

Frau Schulz geht mit ihrer _____ Tochter zum Arzt.

3. Ingrid bringt immer die interessanten Zeitschriften mit.

Ingrid bringt immer die _____ Zeitschriften mit.

4. Wir sind auf den hohen Berg gestiegen.

Wir sind auf den _____ Berg gestiegen.

5. Die sauberen Kinder brauchen sich nicht zu waschen.

Die _____ Kinder brauchen sich nicht zu waschen.

6. Wir trinken den warmen Kaffee.

Wir trinken den _____ Kaffee.

7. Ist das die neue Zeitung?

Ist das die _____ Zeitung?

8. Peter zeigt uns den kurzen Weg zum Kino.

Peter zeigt uns den _____ Weg zum Kino.

9. Die Eltern schenken dem guten Kind einen Ball.

Die Eltern schenken dem _____ Kind einen Ball.

10. Paul und Karl müssen durch die dunkle Strasse nach Hause gehen.

Paul und Karl müssen durch die _____ Strasse nach Hause gehen.

11. Die reichen Amerikaner haben grosse Häuser in Florida.

Die _____ Amerikaner haben grosse Häuser in Florida.

12. Ich sehe mir die alten Kirchen an.

Ich sehe mir die _____ Kirchen an.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

_____ 1. billigsten

_____ 2. jüngsten

_____ 3. interessantesten

_____ 4. höchsten

_____ 5. saubersten

_____ 6. wärmsten

_____ 7. neuste

_____ 8. kürzesten

_____ 9. besten

_____ 10. dunkelste

_____ 11. reichsten

_____ 12. ältesten

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences, supplying the appropriate superlative form of the adjective.

NOTES

1. Die Soldaten geben den armen Kindern etwas zu essen.
Die Soldaten geben den....Kindern etwas zu essen.
2. Den netten Lehrer laden wir zum Essen ein.
Den....Lehrer laden wir zum Essen ein.
3. Herr Meyer hat das grosse Haus in Berlin gekauft.
Herr Meyer hat das Haus in Berlin gekauft.
4. Das kleine Kind muss zu Hause bleiben.
Das....Kind muss zu Hause bleiben.
5. Wir waschen die schmutzigen Äpfel.
Wir waschen die....Äpfel.
6. Der Offizier lässt die müden Soldaten im Auto fahren.
Der Offizier lässt dieSoldaten im Auto fahren.
7. Warum trinkt Karl immer den sauren Wein?
Warum trinkt Karl immer den Wein?
8. Dieses ist das neue Buch, das ich gelesen habe.
Dieses ist das Buch, das ich gelesen habe.

Section 4

Comparison of Adverbs

The preceding sections have dealt with the comparative and superlative forms of adjectives, both in predicate adjective constructions and as descriptive adjectives preceding the nouns to which they refer. In this section, you will learn the comparative and superlative forms of adverbs, that is to say, words which modify verbs rather than nouns, as in the following English examples:

Paul runs fast.

("Fast" refers to the verb "run," and "modifies" or gives more information about the verb.)

We often go to the movies.

("Often" modifies the verb "go," and gives more information about the frequency of the "going.")

The adverbs in the two examples above are in the positive form. It is also possible to have comparative or superlative adverb forms, as in:

Paul runs faster than Sam. (comparative)

or:

Of all the boys in the class, Paul runs fastest. (superlative)

The positive and superlative forms of German adverbs follow the same patterns you have already learned in the case of predicate adjectives. Specifically, the comparative form of the adverb is obtained by adding -er to the base (positive) form, and the superlative is obtained by placing am immediately

before the positive form adverb and adding the invariable ending -sten (or in some cases, -esten). Some adverbs change their stem vowel to umlaut in the comparative and superlative, and some have completely irregular forms.

In the next pages, we will work with the following adverbs. Listen and repeat:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
schnell (fast, quickly)	schneller (faster, etc.)	am schnellsten (fastest, etc.)
langsam (slowly)	langsamer	am langsamsten
spät (late)	später	am spätesten (note <u>-esten</u> ending)
lange (long [of time])	länger	am längsten
gut (well)	besser	am besten
viel (much; a lot)	mehr (more)	am meisten (most)

The adverb gern adds the quality of "liking" or "preferring" to the verb it modifies, as in:

Ich esse gern Kuchen. (I like [to eat] cake.)

Ich esse lieber Eis. (I prefer [to eat] ice cream.)

Ich esse am liebsten Kaviar. (I like [to eat] caviar best.)

Study these adverb forms thoroughly, then turn the page for exercises using them.

Write the comparative and the superlative forms of the adverbs below.

- | | | |
|------------|-------|-------|
| 1. langsam | _____ | _____ |
| 2. schnell | _____ | _____ |
| 3. gut | _____ | _____ |
| 4. gern | _____ | _____ |
| 5. lange | _____ | _____ |
| 6. viel | _____ | _____ |
| 7. spät | _____ | _____ |

Write complete German sentences, supplying the appropriate comparative form of the adverb on the basis of the positive form given below.

1. The Mercedes runs fast, but the Porsche runs faster.
Der Mercedes fährt schnell, aber der Porsche fährt _____.
2. I like to drink coffee, but I prefer tea.

Kaffee trinke ich gern, aber Tee trinke ich _____.

3. This bus runs slowly but the other one runs even more slowly.

Dieser Bus fährt langsam, aber der andere fährt noch _____.

4. Inge sings pretty well, but Helga sings better.

Inge singt ja ganz gut, aber Helga singt _____.

5. Peter always comes late to school, but Hans comes even later.

Peter kommt immer zu spät zur Schule, aber Hans kommt noch _____.

6. Mr. Meyer smokes a lot, but Mr. Müller smokes more.

Herr Meyer raucht viel, aber Herr Müller raucht _____.

7. Peter worked a long time today, but Max worked even longer.

Peter hat heute lange gearbeitet, aber Max hat noch _____ gearbeitet.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

1. _____ langsamer _____ am langsamsten

2. _____ schneller _____ am schnellsten

3. _____ besser _____ am besten

4. _____ lieber _____ am liebsten

5. _____ länger _____ am längsten

6. _____ mehr _____ am meisten

7. _____ später _____ am spätesten

_____ 3. langsamer

_____ 4. besser

_____ 5. später

_____ 6. mehr

_____ 7. länger

TURN THE PAGE.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

_____ 1. schneller

_____ 2. lieber

Write complete German sentences, supplying the appropriate superlative form of the adverb.

1. Hans trinkt gern Wein.

Hans trinkt _____ Wein.

2. Der Mercedes fährt schnell.

Der Mercedes fährt _____.

3. Paul hat heute lange gearbeitet.

Paul hat heute _____
gearbeitet.

4. Dieser Bus fährt langsam.

Dieser Bus fährt _____.

5. Herr und Frau Müller bleiben gern zu Hause.

Herr und Frau Müller bleiben _____
_____ zu Hause.

6. Dieser Film gefällt mir immer noch gut.

Dieser Film gefällt mir immer noch _____
_____.

7. Im Winter regnet es in Deutschland viel.

Im Winter regnet es in Deutschland _____
_____.

TURN THE PAGE AND CHECK YOUR ANSWERS.

START THE TAPE.

Say complete German sentences on the basis of the given English. Note that positive, comparative, and superlative adverb forms are used.

1. This bus does not run as fast as that one.

Dieser Bus fährt nicht jener.

2. Hans intends to come later.

Hans will kommen.

3. Mr. Meyer smokes more than his wife.

Herr Meyer raucht seine Frau.

4. The bus is arriving later today than yesterday.

Der Bus kommt heute gestern an.

5. Mrs. Schulz likes strong coffee.

Frau Schulz trinkt starken Kaffee.

6. This plane flies slower than the new planes.

Dieses Flugzeug fliegt die neuen Flugzeuge.

7. Karl doesn't work as much as Hans.

Karl arbeitet nicht Hans.

If you made any mistakes, write the correct German.

- _____ 1. am liebsten
- _____ 2. am schnellsten
- _____ 3. am längsten
- _____ 4. am langsamsten
- _____ 5. am liebsten
- _____ 6. am besten
- _____ 7. am meisten

START THE TAPE.

8. These cars run slowly but that old Ford runs slowest.

Diese Autos fahren langsam, aber jener alte Ford fährt

9. Maria and Hans dance well, but Inge dances better.
Maria und Hans tanzen gut, aber Inge tanzt

10. I prefer wine to beer.
Ich trinke Wein Bier.

NOTES

INDEX

OF GRAMMATICAL FEATURES

Each entry is followed by the roman numeral indicated in the title of the grammatical structure book and by the appropriate page numbers in this particular book. For example, the first entry of the index

"Aber" and "Sondern" I 160 - 162

means that these items will be found in GRAMMATICAL STRUCTURES I on pages 160 - 162.

Index

<u>FEATURE</u>	<u>PAGE</u>	<u>FEATURE</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
"Aber" and "Sondern"	I 160-162	- Comparative of ...	
Accusative Case		- Descriptive Adjectives	II 299-307
- Articles	I 12- 29	- Predicate Adjectives	II 287-298
- Descriptive Adjective Endings after "Der" words in Accusative Case		- Comparison of ...	II 227-286
- Singular	II 8- 14	- Descriptive Adjectives	
- Plural	II 22- 28	- In Appositions	II 29- 32
- Noun Objects - sentences with Dative and Accusative	I 85- 91	- Endings after "Der" words	II 1- 32, II 110-119
- Personal Pronouns	I 133-138	- Nominative Singular	II 4- 7
- Familiar	I 209-212	- Accusative Singular	II 8- 14
- Prepositions		- Dative Singular	II 15- 21
- requiring Accusative	I 119-122	- Plural	II 22- 28
- taking either Accusative or Dative	I 123-130	- Endings after "Kein" words	II 33- 55
- contracted forms of ...	I 131-132	- Nominative Singular	II 33- 43
- Reflexive constructions in Accusative Case	I 225-230	- Accusative Singular	II 44- 50
- Relative Pronouns	II 241-245	- Dative Singular	II 51- 54
- Word order for emphasis	I 92- 96	- Plural	II 55
Adjectives		- Unpreceded Descriptive Adjectives	II 124-130
- In Appellations, Salutations and Idiomatic Expressions	II 131-136	- Not Preceded by "Der" and "Kein" words	II 124-140
		- Past and Present Participles used as Adjectives	III 175-179
		- Predicate Adjectives	II 1- 3
		- comparative of	II 287-298
		- Participles (Past and Present) used as Predicate Adjectives	III 171-174
		- Quantity, Adjectives expressing	II 137-140

<u>FEATURE</u>	<u>PAGE</u>	<u>FEATURE</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
Adverbs		Conditional	
- Comparison of Adverbs	II 308-312	- in "then" clauses	IV 27- 38
- Participles (Past and Present) used as ...	III 166-170	Contractions of Prepositions	I 131-132
Appellations, Salutations and Idiomatic Expressions		Contrary-to-Fact Statements	IV 27- 38
- Adjectives used in	II 131-136	- Containing Modals	IV 48- 52
Appositions, descriptive adjectives in	II 29- 32	- Past Subjunctive with Modals in...	IV 123-130
Articles		- Subjunctive of Strong Verbs in...	IV 72- 76
- Accusative Case	I 12- 20	"Da" Compounds	III 26- 28
- Dative Case		Dative Case	
- of Definite Article	I 49- 52	- Articles	
- of Indefinite Article	I 53- 54	- Definite	I 49- 52
Clothing or Parts of Body, reference to	I 258-260	- Indefinite	I 53- 54
Comparative		- Descriptive Adjective Endings After "Kein" words	
- of Descriptive Adjective	II 299-307	- in Dative Case	
- of Predicate Adjective	II 287-298	- Singular	II 51- 54
Comparison of Adjectives	II 277-286	- Plural	II 55
Comparison of Adverbs	II 308-312	- "Kein" and Possesive Adjectives	I 55- 60
		- Noun Objects - sentences with Dative and Accusative	I 85- 91
		- Passive Voice with Dative Objects	III 48- 54

Index

<u>FEATURE</u>	<u>PAGE</u>	<u>FEATURE</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
- Personal Pronouns	I 67- 72	Descriptive Adjectives - see Adjectives, descriptive	
- Familiar	I 209-212	"Dieser" and "Der" words - see "Der" words	
- Prepositions		Double Infinitive Construction	
- requiring Dative	I 73- 84	- Future Tense, using Modal Auxiliary	IV 1- 26
- taking either Dative or Accusative	I 123-130	- Past and Present Perfect, using Modal Auxiliary	III 271-294
- contracted Forms of ...	I 131-132	Emphasis (with expressed word order)	I 92- 96
- Reflexive Constructions in Dative	I 231-237	Extended Adjectival Constructions	
- Relative Pronouns	II 246-249	- Containing Past Participles	III 230-239
- "Schmecken" and "Gefallen"	I 61- 66	- Containing Present Participles	III 240-242
- Dative Verbs in Present Perfect Passive	III 155-160	Extended Adverbial Constructions	
- Word order, for emphasis	I 92- 96	- Containing Present Participles	III 243-247
Definite Articles		Familiar Address	I 187-208
- Accusative Case of ...		- Imperatives	I 203-208
- Dative Case of ...	I 49- 52	- Personal Pronouns	
"Der" words ("dieser" and others)		- Nominative Case	I 187-194
- Adjectives endings after "Der" words	II 1- 32, II 110-123	- Accusative Case	I 209-212
- "Dieser" and other "Der" words	II 95-109	- Dative Case	I 209-212
- Genitive of "Der" words	III 110-129	- Possessive Adjectives	I 213-224

<u>FEATURE</u>	<u>PAGE</u>	<u>FEATURE</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
- "Sein" and "Haben" and other verbs	I 187-194	- Common Nouns, "der" and "ein" words - Genitive forms of ..	III 110-129
- Separable Prefix Verbs and Modals	I 195-202	- Interrogatives and Relative Pronouns, Genitive forms of	III 130-135
Foreign Verb ending in "-ieren" and Present Tense of ...	II 171-174	- Prepositions requiring Genitive	III 136-139
Future Tense	III 205-230	- Proper Nouns, Genitive forms of	III 140-144
- Double Infinitive (see Future Tense, Modal Auxiliary)		Idiomatic Expressions, Appellations and Salutations	
- Formation and Use of	III 211-221	- Adjectives used in	II 131-136
- in Passive Voice	III 224-230	Imperative	
- Modal Auxiliary, use with (Double Infinitive)	IV 1- 26	- Familiar Imperatives	I 203-208
- Future Tense in sentences containing Modals or verbs used like Modals	IV 1- 13	- Forms of	I 108-114
- Present Probability, expressed in sentences containing Modals	IV 14- 16	- Reflexive Constructions in ...	I 247-252
- Subordinate Clauses with True Modals	IV 17- 21	- Separable Prefix verbs and ...	I 115-118
- Subordinate Clauses with verbs used like Modals	IV 22- 26	Imperfect Tense	III 55- 65
"Gefallen" und "Schmecken"	I 61- 66	- Formation of	
Genitive Case	III 110-144	- with weak verbs	III 55- 65
		- with strong verbs	III 86-103
		- with mixed verbs	III 104-109
		- of "haben", "sein" and "werden"	III 73- 85
		- of Modals	III 66- 72

Index

<u>FEATURE</u>	<u>PAGE</u>	<u>FEATURE</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
- of Passive Voice sentences - containing Modals	III 248-261 III 262-270	"Lassen" and "Sich Lassen"	II 86- 94
Indefinite Articles		"Man" - use of as Indefinite Pronoun	
- Accusative Case of	I 12- 29	- omission of in Present Perfect Passive	III 155-160
- Dative Case of	I 53-54	- Passive equivalents of Active sentences with "Man"	III 48- 54
Indefinite Pronoun "Man" - see "Man" used as indefinite pronoun		Mixed Verbs	
Inseparable Prefix Verbs		- Imperfect Tense of	III 104-109
- Present Perfect Tense of	II 167-170	- Present Perfect Tense of	II 151-158
Interrogative		- Subjunctive Forms of	IV 91- 93
- Genitive Case of	III 130-135	Modal Auxiliary Verbs	
Inverted Word Order	I 25- 28	- Contrary-to-Fact Statements containing Modals	IV 48- 52 IV 123-130
Irregular Verbs - see strong verbs and mixed verbs		- in Past Subjunctive	
"Kein" Words		- Double Infinitive Constructions	
- Adjective endings after ...	II 33- 35	- Future Tense Constructions with ...	IV 1- 26
- Dative of "Kein" and Possessive Adjectives	I 55- 60	- containing Modals or Verbs used like Modals	IV 1- 13
- Plural Forms of ...	I 177-186	- expressing Present Probability in sentences containing Modals	IV 14- 16
- Use of ...	I 29- 32	- In Subordinate Clauses; with true Modals,	IV 17- 21
		with Verbs used as Modals	IV 22- 26

<u>FEATURE</u>	<u>PAGE</u>	<u>FEATURE</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
- Past Perfect Constructions with ...	III 289-292	Mögen - use of	I 155-159
- using Modals as Full Verbs in ...	III 293-294	"N - nouns"	I 21- 24
- Present Perfect Construction with ...	III 271-284	Nominative Case	
- using Modals as Full Verbs in ...	III 293-294	- Descriptive Adjective Endings after "der" words	
- using Modals in Subordinate Clauses	III 285-288	- Nominative, singular	II 4- 7
		plural	II 22- 28
- Familiar Forms of Modals	I 195-202	- Descriptive Adjective Endings after "kein" words	
- Formation and Use of Modals	I 139-140	- Nominative, singular	II 34- 43
		plural	II 55
- Imperfect Tense of Modals	III 66- 72	- of Familiar Personal Pronouns	I 187-194
- of Passive containing Modals	III 262-270	- of Relative Pronouns	II 232-240
- Mögen, use of	I 155-159		
		Participles	III 161-179
- Passive Sentences containing Modals	III 42- 47	- Extended Adjectival Constructions	
- Imperfect Tense of ...	III 262-270	- containing Past Participles	III 230-239
		- containing Present Participles	III 240-242
- Past Subjunctive with Modals		- Extended Adverbial Constructions	
- In Contrary-to-Fact Statements	IV 123-130	- containing Present Participles	III 243-247
- other uses of	IV 131-145		
		- Formation of Participles, Past and Present	III 161-165
- Reflexive Constructions with Modals	I 253-257		
- with Separable Prefixes	I 151-154		
- Verbs used like Modals	II 69- 94		

Index

<u>FEATURE</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
- Past and Present Participles	
- used as Adverbs	III 166-170
- used as Descriptive Adjectives	III 175-179
- used as Predicate Adjectives	III 171-174
Parts of Body or Clothing, reference to	I 258-260
Passive Voice	
- with Dative Object; Passive equivalent of Active sentences with "man"	III 48- 54
- Future Tense Passive	III 224-230
- Imperfect Tense Passive	III 248-261
- Modal Auxiliary in Passive sentences	III 42- 47
- Present Tense Passive	III 29- 54
- Present Perfect Tense Passive	III 145-154
- with "von" + Agent, Dative Verbs, omission of "man"	III 157-160
Past Participle - see Participles, past	
Past Perfect Tense	III 180-204
- Modal Auxiliaries used in ...	III 289-292
- used as Full Verbs	III 293-294
- of Regular or Irregular Verbs	III 180-191

<u>FEATURE</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
- of Separable Prefix Verbs and Reflexive Constructions	III 192-195
- Use of ...	III 196-204
Past Subjunctive	
- Forms of ...	IV 101-112
- with Modals	
- Contrary-to-Fact Statements	IV 123-130
- other uses of Past Subjunctive with Modals	IV 131-139
- Uses of ...	IV 113-122
Perfect Tense - see Past Perfect and Present Perfect	
Personal Pronouns - see Pronouns, Personal	
Plural Forms	I 163-186
Possessive Adjectives	I 33- 48
- Dative Case of Possessive Adjectives and "Kein"	I 55- 60
Predicate Adjectives - see Adjectives, predicate	
Prefixes - see separable Prefix verbs and Inseparable Prefix verbs	
Pre-Noun Inserts	III 230-239

<u>FEATURE</u>	<u>PAGE</u>	<u>FEATURE</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
Prepositions		- Relative - see Relative Pronouns	
- requiring the Accusative	I 119-138	Quantity, adjectives expressing	II 137-140
- requiring the Dative	I 73- 84	Reciprocal Meaning, reflexive constructions with ...	I 244-246
- which take either Accusative or Dative	I 123-130	Regular verbs	
- requiring the Genitive	II 136-139	Regular Verbs - see Weak Verbs	I 225-262
- contracted Forms of ...	I 131-132	- in the Accusative Case	I 225-230
- Relative Pronouns following ... - see "Relative Pronouns"		- in the Dative Case	I 231-237
- Verbs and Phrases with Prepositions	IV 140-145	- in the Imperative	I 247-252
Present Participles - see Participles, Present		- with Modal Auxiliaries	I 253-257
Probability		- with Reciprocal Meaning	I 244-246
- Future Tense expressing Present Probability	III 222-223	- with Separable Prefix Verbs	I 238-243
- in sentences containing Modals	IV 14- 16	- Reference to Clothing or Parts of the Body	I 258-260
Pronouns		Relative Pronouns	II 229-276
- Personal		- Overview of ...	II 229-231
- Dative Case of ...	I 67- 72	- Nominative Case of ...	II 232-240
- Accusative Case of ...	I 133-138	- Accusative Case of ...	II 241-245
- Familiar Personal Pronouns		- Dative Case of ...	II 246-249
- Nominative Case	I 187-194		
- Dative and Accusative Case	I 209-212		

Index

<u>FEATURE</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
- Genitive Case of ...	II 130-135
- Following Prepositions	
- requiring Accusative	II 256-257
- requiring Dative	II 258-262
- taking either Dative or Accusative	II 263-268
- "wer" and "was" as Relative Pronouns	III 1- 15
Salutations, Appellations and Idiomatic Expressions	
- Adjectives used in ...	II 131-136
"Schmecken" and "Gefallen"	I 61- 66
Separable Prefix Verbs	I 97-107
- Past Perfect of	III 192-195
- Present Perfect of	II 162-166
- Familiar Forms of	II 195-202
- Imperative Forms of	I 115-118
- Modal Verbs with	I 151-154
- Reflexive Constructions with ...	I 238-243
Sequence of Objects - see Word Order	
"Sondern" and "Aber"	I 160-162

<u>FEATURE</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
Strong Verbs	
- List of Commonly Used Strong Verbs	II 197-203
- Present Tense of	I 1- 11
- Imperfect Tense of Strong Verbs	III 86-103
- Past Perfect Tense of Regular and Irregular Verbs	III 180-191
- Present Perfect Tense of Irregular Verbs	II 151-158
- Subjunctive Forms of Strong Verbs	IV 59- 71
- in Contrary-to-Fact Statements	IV 72- 76
- in other Subjunctive Contexts	IV 77- 83
Subjunctive	
- Contrary-to-Fact Statements, subjunctive of "werden", conditional in "then" Clauses	IV 27- 38
- Contrary-to-Fact Statements	
- containing Modals	IV 48- 52
- subjunctive if Strong Verbs contained in ...	IV 72- 76
- of Strong Verbs	IV 59- 71
- in Contrary-to-Fact Statements	IV 72- 76
- in other Subjunctive Contexts	IV 77- 83

<u>FEATURE</u>	<u>PAGE</u>	<u>FEATURE</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
- of Weak Verbs	IV 84- 90	Transposed Word Order - see Word Order, transposed	
- of Mixed Verbs	IV 91- 93	Verbs - see: Strong Verbs	
- Subjunctive uses of Weak and Mixed Verbs	IV 93-100	Mixed Verbs	
- Subjunctive of "Haben", "Sein" in "if" Clauses	IV 39- 47	Weak Verbs	
- Past Subjunctive - see Past Subjunctive		Modal Auxiliary Verbs	
- other uses of Subjunctive	IV 53- 58	Separable Prefix Verbs	
Subordinating Conjunctions		Inseparable Prefix Verbs	
- Transposed Word Order after ...	II 204-212	"Von" + Agent Phrases	III 155-160
Subordinate Clauses		Weak Verbs	
- Transposed word order in ...	II 213-221	- Imperfect Tense of Weak Verbs	III 55- 65
- Following Question words	II 222-226	- Past Perfect Tense of Regular and Irregular Verbs	III 180-191
- Sentences Beginning with a Subordinate Clause	II 227-228	- Present Perfect Tense of Weak Verbs	II 144-150
Superlative		- Subjunctive Forms of Weak Verbs	IV 84- 90
- of Descriptive Adjectives	II 299-307	- Subjunctive Uses of Weak and Mixed Verbs	IV 93-100
- of Predicate Adjectives	II 287-298	"Wer" und "Was" as Relative Pronouns	III 1- 15
Tenses - see specific tenses		"Wo" Compounds	III 16- 25
		Word Order	
		- for Emphasis	I 92- 96
		- Inverted	I 25- 28

Index

<u>FEATURE</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
- Sentences with Dative and Accusative Noun Object	I 85- 91
- Sentences with two Noun Objects	II 56- 58
- Sentences with one Noun Object and one Pronoun Object	II 59- 63
- Sentences with two Pronoun Objects	II 64- 68
- Sequence of Objects	II 56- 68
- Transposed Word Order	II 204-228
- After Subordinating Conjunctions	II 204-212
- In Subordinate Clauses using Separable Prefix Verbs, Modal Auxiliary Verbs, Reflexive Constructions, and Present Perfect Tense	II 213-221
- In Subordinate Clauses following Question Words	II 222-226
- Sentences beginning with a Subordinate Clause	II 227-228